

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English Irregular Verbs

A Reference for Beginning
to Advanced ESL Students

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English
Irregular
Verbs

This page intentionally left blank

McGRAW-HILL'S ESSENTIAL

English Irregular Verbs

MARK LESTER, PH.D. • DANIEL FRANKLIN • TERRY YOKOTA



New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

Copyright © 2010 by Mark Lester, Daniel Franklin, and Terry Yokota. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-0-07-160287-7

MHID: 0-07-160287-9

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-0-07-160286-0, MHID: 0-07-160286-0.

All trademarks are trademarks of their respective owners. Rather than put a trademark symbol after every occurrence of a trademarked name, we use names in an editorial fashion only, and to the benefit of the trademark owner, with no intention of infringement of the trademark. Where such designations appear in this book, they have been printed with initial caps.

McGraw-Hill eBooks are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions, or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative please e-mail us at bulksales@mcgraw-hill.com.

TERMS OF USE

This is a copyrighted work and The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. (“McGrawHill”) and its licensors reserve all rights in and to the work. Use of this work is subject to these terms. Except as permitted under the Copyright Act of 1976 and the right to store and retrieve one copy of the work, you may not decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, reproduce, modify, create derivative works based upon, transmit, distribute, disseminate, sell, publish or sublicense the work or any part of it without McGraw-Hill’s prior consent. You may use the work for your own noncommercial and personal use; any other use of the work is strictly prohibited. Your right to use the work may be terminated if you fail to comply with these terms.

THE WORK IS PROVIDED “AS IS.” McGRAW-HILL AND ITS LICENSORS MAKE NO GUARANTEES OR WARRANTIES AS TO THE ACCURACY, ADEQUACY OR COMPLETENESS OF OR RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED FROM USING THE WORK, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION THAT CAN BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE WORK VIA HYPERLINK OR OTHERWISE, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. McGraw-Hill and its licensors do not warrant or guarantee that the functions contained in the work will meet your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free. Neither McGraw-Hill nor its licensors shall be liable to you or anyone else for any inaccuracy, error or omission, regardless of cause, in the work or for any damages resulting therefrom. McGraw-Hill has no responsibility for the content of any information accessed through the work. Under no circumstances shall McGraw-Hill and/or its licensors be liable for any indirect, incidental, special, punitive, consequential or similar damages that result from the use of or inability to use the work, even if any of them has been advised of the possibility of such damages. This limitation of liability shall apply to any claim or cause whatsoever whether such claim or cause arises in contract, tort or otherwise.

Contents

Preface vii

The English Irregular Verb 1

- ▶ *Summaries of verb formation, tense usage, complementation, and phrasal verbs*

Regular vs. Irregular Verbs 1

Verb Forms and Tense Usage 1

The Six Basic Verb Forms 1

Base Form 1

Present 2

Past 3

Infinitive 4

Present Participle 5

Past Participle 5

Tense Formation and Usage 6

The Three Simple Tenses 6

The Three Perfect Tenses 7

The Three Progressive Tenses 8

The Intensive Tenses 9

The Passive Voice 10

Verb Complements 10

Complement Types 12

Single Grammatical Element Complements 12

Multiple Grammatical Element Complements 13

Phrasal Verbs 13

Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs 14

The Most Common Phrasal Particles 16

Verbs of Motion 17

Expressions 17

CHART *Guide to Conjugations* 18

CHART *Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs* 19

188 English Irregular Verbs 21

- ▶ *Alphabetically ordered, with conjugations, complements, phrasal verbs, and expressions*

Top 30 Verbs: Full page of examples adjoining select conjugation/complement pages

Irregular Verb Form Index 241

- ▶ *Index showing the base form of all irregular verb forms in the book*

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs contains basic conjugations and comprehensive usage patterns for 188 irregular verbs—all the irregular verbs that you are likely to encounter in even the most extensive reading. We have excluded only archaic and rarely used verbs, like *shrive* (“offer the religious rite of confession to”) and *smite* (“to attack and kill/defeat,” usually encountered only in the King James Bible of 1611).

In addition to the basic conjugation of each verb, *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* provides two unique features:

- **A complete listing of the complements for each verb**

Verb complements are grammatical structures that verbs use to make correct, meaningful sentences. Irregular verbs in English have 16 basic complements, plus dozens of combinations of these. For instance, the verb *make*, when it means “force, cause,” uses two complements together: an object and an infinitive. The infinitive, however, must be in its base form, that is, used without the *to* that normally accompanies an infinitive.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE The teacher made **the students** *sit quietly*.

Most English learners, even advanced ones, make the mistake of using *to* with the infinitive, because that is the more common complement. *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* and its companion, *The Big Book of English Verbs*, are the only books that provide the correct complement in a useful format.

- **A listing of the important phrasal verb constructions for each verb**

Phrasal verbs are idiomatic combinations of verbs plus adverbs or prepositions. For example, the phrasal verb *show up* can mean “to arrive,” even though nothing in the meaning of *show* or *up* would lead you to expect this meaning.

Moreover, there are important grammatical differences between phrasal verbs that consist of a verb + an adverb (separable phrasal verbs) and those that consist of a verb + a preposition (inseparable phrasal verbs). If the second element in a phrasal verb is an adverb, the adverb can (and in some cases **MUST**) be placed after the object. If the second element is a preposition, however, it can **NEVER** be moved away from the verb. *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* not only gives the meaning of every phrasal verb, but also indicates which combinations are separable and which are inseparable.

A 2007 study by Harvard scientists revealed that, over the centuries, English irregular verbs have been slowly becoming regular. *Help* and *work* were once irregular verbs! The scientists predict that *wed* will probably be the next irregular verb to become completely regular: *Wed ~ wed ~ have wed* will become *wed ~ wedded ~ have wedded*. The more common irregular verbs, like *be* and *come*, will take thousands of years to become regular. In the meantime, you have *McGraw-Hill's Essential English Irregular Verbs* to help you use all of these important verbs correctly.

Mark Lester
Daniel Franklin
Terry Yokota

This page intentionally left blank

The English Irregular Verb

REGULAR VS. IRREGULAR VERBS

A **regular verb** forms its past tense and past participle by adding *-d* or *-ed* to its base form. This ending may be pronounced /d/ (*cared, happened, viewed*), /ʊd/ (*committed, needed, listed*), or /t/ (*mixed, searched, slipped*). See pages 3–4 for details.

An **irregular verb** forms its past tense or past participle, or both, in an unpredictable way: by adding no ending at all, by changing the vowel of the base form, by adding a different ending, or by using a combination of these methods (*let ~ let ~ have let, meet ~ met ~ have met, swim ~ swam ~ swum, blow ~ blew ~ have blown*).

A verb is irregular based on its pronunciation, not on its spelling; for example, *lay* (*laid ~ have laid*) and *pay* (*paid ~ have paid*) are regular, because they add /d/ to their base forms for their past tense and past participle—like *stay* (*stayed ~ have stayed*)—even though the *ayed* is spelled *aid*.

Compound verbs, like *overeat* (< *eat*), *outsell* (< *sell*), and *withhold* (< *hold*), form their past tenses and past participles like their root verbs; for example, *overeat ~ overate ~ have overeaten*. A few high-frequency compound verbs, like *broadcast*, *overcome*, and *understand*, are included in the 188 irregular verbs presented here.

VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

The Six Basic Verb Forms

Six basic verb forms are used to create the entire tense system of English: base form, present, past, infinitive, present participle, and past participle. These forms are illustrated in the following chart by the regular verb *walk* and the irregular verb *fly*.

BASE FORM	walk	fly
PRESENT	walk walks	fly flies
PAST	walked	flew
INFINITIVE	to walk	to fly
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	walking	flying
PAST PARTICIPLE	walked	flown

See “Guide to Conjugations” on page 18.

Base Form

The base form of a verb is its form in a dictionary entry. For example, if you looked up *sang*, the dictionary would refer you to the base form *sing*.

The base form is also the source (or base) for the present (with a few exceptions), infinitive, and present participle of the verb, whether the verb is regular or irregular.

The base form is used as a verb in three ways.

(1) It follows certain helping verbs, the most important being the **modal auxiliary verbs**, or **modals** for short: *can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should, and must*. (Modal verbs themselves have no base form, infinitive, present participle, or past participle; they have only present and past forms.) Note the base form of the verb *be* in the following sentences.

2 VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

I may **be** a little late.
He will **be** in New York all week.
You must **be** more careful.

Other verbs followed by the base form of a verb include *dare* (with *not*), *need* (with *not*), and *help*.

We need not **be** silent on the issue.

- (2) The base form is used in imperatives (commands).

Be good!
Come here, please.
Ring the bell.

- (3) Less commonly, the base form is used as a complement of certain verbs.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE The queen made **the guests wait** in the hall.

A base-form infinitive is an infinitive minus the *to*. If an infinitive including the word *to* were substituted for the base-form infinitive in the example above, the resulting sentence would be ungrammatical.

X The queen made **the guests to wait** in the hall.

Present

With the sole exception of the verb *be*, the present form of all verbs, including irregular verbs, is derived directly from the base form. The main difference between the present and base forms is that the third-person singular present form adds *-s* or *-es* to the base form of the verb; all other present forms are identical to the base form.

The base form of *be* is different from all of its present tense forms.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST PERSON	I am	we are
SECOND PERSON	you are	you are
THIRD PERSON	he/she/it is	they are

Both the pronunciation and the spelling of the third-person singular present ending are predictable. If the base form ends in a sibilant sound (*s*, *z*, *x*, *sh*, *ch*, *tch*, or *j* (as in *judge*)), the ending is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *buzz*. The ending is spelled *-es*, unless the base form already ends in *-e*, in which case only *-s* is added.

BASE FORM	THIRD-PERSON SINGULAR PRESENT FORM
lose	loses
freeze	freezes
beseech	beseeches
catch	catches

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than a sibilant, the ending is pronounced /s/ and is spelled *-es*. The voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p*, *t*, *ck*, *k*, *f*, or *gh* (when pronounced /f/).

keep	keeps
beat	beats
seek	seeks
take	takes

If the base form ends in a voiced consonant other than a sibilant or in a pronounced vowel (as opposed to a silent final *-e*), the ending is pronounced /z/ and is spelled *-s*.

forbid	forbids
bend	bends
dig	digs
feel	feels
swim	swims
mean	means
prove	proves
pay	pays
flee	flees
fly	flies
throw	throws
strew	strews

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the *-s* ending (see *fly* above).

A few verbs have irregular third-person singular present forms.

be	is
have	has

Two verbs have irregular pronunciations in the third-person singular present form.

do	does (rhymes with <i>buzz</i>)
say	says (rhymes with <i>fez</i>)

Past

There are two types of past forms: regular and irregular.

Regular verbs form the past tense by adding *-ed* to the base form (or simply *-d* if the base form already ends in *-e*).

BASE FORM	REGULAR PAST FORM
open	opened
place	placed

The regular past ending has three different, but completely predictable, pronunciations. If the base form ends in a /t/ or /d/ sound, the *-ed* is pronounced as a separate syllable rhyming with *bud*.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS A SEPARATE SYLLABLE
vote	voted
decide	decided

If the base form ends in a voiceless consonant sound other than /t/, the *-ed* is pronounced /t/. The final voiceless consonants are usually spelled with a *p*, *ck*, *k*, *s*, *sh*, *ch*, *tch*, *x*, *f*, or *gh* (when pronounced /f/).

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /t/
tap	tapped
attack	attacked
miss	missed
match	matched
cough	coughed

4 VERB FORMS AND TENSE USAGE

Note that if the base form ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled to form the past: *permit* ~ *permitted*, *stop* ~ *stopped*.

If the base form ends in a pronounced vowel or in a voiced consonant sound other than /d/, the *-ed* is pronounced /d/. The voiced consonants are usually spelled with a *b*, *g*, *z*, *j*, *m*, *n*, *l*, or *r*.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM PRONOUNCED AS /d/
tie	tied
enjoy	enjoyed
kill	killed
care	cared

Note that if the base form ends in *-y* without a preceding vowel, the *-y* changes to *-ie* before the *-d* ending (*cry* ~ *cried*). Also note the spellings of the past forms of *lay* and *pay*: *laid* and *paid*, respectively.

The past forms of irregular verbs reflect older patterns of forming the past tense. These patterns have merged to such an extent that it is not practical to learn the past forms of irregular verbs on the basis of their historical patterns. Similarities exist, however, in how some irregular verbs form the past tense.

VOWEL CHANGE	ring	rang	sing	sang		
VOWEL CHANGE + -d	sell	sold	tell	told		
VOWEL CHANGE + -t	feel	felt	kneel	knelt		
	keep	kept	sleep	slept	sweep	swept
NO CHANGE	bet	bet	put	put	rid	rid

Following are the past forms of the 13 most common verbs in English, all irregular.

BASE FORM	PAST FORM
be	was were
have	had
do	did
say	said (rhymes with <i>fed</i>)
make	made
go	went
take	took
come	came
see	saw
know	knew
give	gave
get	got
find	found

Infinitive

The infinitive of a verb consists of *to* + its base form. There are no exceptions—even the verb *be* is regular: *to be*.

BASE FORM	INFINITIVE
be	to be
fly	to fly
spend	to spend

Infinitives are used as complements of certain verbs.

I would like **to meet** your friend.
They invited us **to spend** the night.

Present Participle

The present participle is formed by adding *-ing* to the base form.

BASE FORM	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
be	being
do	doing
fly	flying
spend	spending

Note that if a verb ends in a single consonant preceded by a stressed short vowel, the consonant is usually doubled: *bet ~ betting, dig ~ digging, forbid ~ forbidding*. If a verb ends in silent *-e*, the *-e* is dropped before the *-ing* ending: *come ~ coming, have ~ having, write ~ writing*.

The present participle is used in two ways. By far the more common is after a form of the verb *be* in the progressive tenses.

The kids were **going** to the beach.
I am **flying** to Chicago tomorrow.

Less common is the present participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

I hate **doing** the dishes every night.
I saw Holly **speaking** with Christopher.

Past Participle

There are two types of past participles: regular and irregular.

Regular past participles are formed in exactly the same way as the regular past, that is, by adding *-ed* to the base form. To distinguish the two forms, remember that the past form can occur by itself, but the past participle almost always occurs after a form of *be* or *have*.

Like irregular past forms, irregular past participle forms are unpredictable. There is one generalization, however, that we can make about them. In older periods of English, most irregular past participles ended in *-en*. Today, about one third of irregular past participles still retain this *-en* ending. Thus, if an irregular verb form has an *-en* (or *-n*) ending, we know it is a past participle.

BASE FORM	PAST PARTICIPLE
choose	chosen
eat	eaten
fly	flown
see	seen
speak	spoken

Past participles are used in three ways in English.

- (1) They are used in the perfect tenses after the helping verb *have*.

They have **flown** in from Pittsburgh for the wedding.
We had **shut** the window earlier.
He will have **broken** every record.

- (2) Past participles are used in passive sentences after the helping verb *be*.

Skirmishes are being **fought** at the border.
Her play was **seen** by thousands of people.

- (3) Much less common is the past participle's use as a complement of certain verbs.

We need the car **taken** to the garage for an oil change.

Tense Formation and Usage

The term **tense** can have several different meanings, but we use **tense** to refer to any of the nine different verb constructions that result when the three logical time divisions (present, past, and future) are integrated with the three aspect categories of verbs (simple, perfect, and progressive—*simple* here means that it is not perfect or progressive). These nine tenses are illustrated in the following chart, with the first-person singular form of *fly*.

	SIMPLE	PERFECT	PROGRESSIVE
PRESENT	I fly	I have flown	I am flying
PAST	I flew	I had flown	I was flying
FUTURE	I will fly	I will have flown	I will be flying

The Three Simple Tenses

PRESENT TENSE

The most confusing feature of the present tense for English learners is that the simple present tense does not actually signify present time. Its three main uses are the following: (1) making factual statements and generalizations, (2) describing habitual actions, and (3) describing predictable future events or actions.

(1) The simple present tense is used to state objective facts that are not restricted by time.

A mile **is** 5,280 feet.
The sun **rises** in the east and **sets** in the west.

Similarly, the simple present tense is used to state facts that are true for the foreseeable future.

She **teaches** algebra.

This sentence means, “She hasn’t always taught algebra, and at some point in the future, she may teach another subject. Nevertheless, it is likely that she will continue teaching algebra indefinitely.” Contrast this sentence with the following one, which uses the present progressive tense.

She **is teaching** algebra.

This sentence means, “She is only teaching algebra temporarily, and she expects to teach another subject eventually.”

The simple present tense is also used to make generalizations that are considered valid for the foreseeable future.

I **know** Latin and Greek.
Sneezing **spreads** germs.

(2) The simple present tense is used to describe habitual actions.

Bob **reads** his e-mail first thing in the morning.

This sentence describes what Bob normally does first thing in the morning. It does not mean that Bob is reading his e-mail now, at this very moment. The sentence would still be valid if Bob were on vacation and hadn’t read his e-mail in a week.

(3) The simple present tense is often used for near-future events or actions that one expects to happen.

Our flight **leaves** at nine.
I **go** home on Sunday.

Note that the simple present tense is not used for uncertain future events. For example, it is not used to describe future weather.

✗ It **freezes** tonight.

PAST TENSE

The simple past tense describes an event or action that was completed before the present moment in time; that is, the event or action has already taken place. The past tense can refer to a single point in past time.

I **mowed** the lawn yesterday afternoon.

The past tense can also refer to a span of time in the past, as long as it was completed before the present.

Ira **sang** in the choir for nearly 30 years.

This sentence means that Ira is no longer singing in the choir at this time.

In addition, the simple past tense has inherited one of the functions of the subjunctive from older periods of English: indicating that the speaker is talking hypothetically or even contrary to fact. This hypothetical use of the past tense does NOT indicate past time. Its most common use is in IF-CLAUSES.

If I **were** you, I **would** be sure that I **was** finished on time.

The use of *were* rather than the expected *was* survives from an old subjunctive form. Notice also that the other two verbs in the sentence are in the past tense, even though the sentence does not refer to past time.

FUTURE TENSE

The simple future tense consists of the helping verb *will* followed by the base form of the main verb.

I **will take** a taxi to the airport.
They **will meet** us at the restaurant.

The helping verb *will* is one of the nine modal auxiliary verbs: *can/could*, *may/might*, *will/would*, *shall/should*, and *must*. Although *will* is used to form the future tense, any of the other eight modals can refer to future time.

I **can take** a taxi to the airport.
I **could take** a taxi to the airport.
I **may take** a taxi to the airport.
I **must take** a taxi to the airport.

Each of the nine modals has its own range of meanings, allowing English speakers to make a number of subtly different statements about the possibility, certainty, desirability, or necessity of a future action.

The Three Perfect Tenses

The three perfect tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The present tense form of *have* is used for the present perfect, the past tense form for the past perfect, and the future tense form for the future perfect.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

The present perfect tense consists of *have* or *has* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense is used to describe an action that began in the past and has continued up

to the present time, with the implication that it will continue into the future. The best way to understand the present perfect tense is to compare it to the past tense.

PAST TENSE

John **took** a bus to work for five years.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

John **has taken** a bus to work for five years.

According to the past tense sentence, John no longer takes a bus to work; he is retired or he uses another means of transportation to get to work. According to the present perfect tense sentence, John still takes a bus to work and is expected to continue doing so into the foreseeable future.

PAST PERFECT TENSE

The past perfect tense consists of *had* followed by the past participle of the main verb. The most common use of this tense is to emphasize that an event in the past was completed before a more recent event took place.

My parents **had left** for the airport before my plane landed.

This sentence describes two past-time events. The first event is the parents' leaving for the airport, and the second event is the plane landing. The use of the past perfect tense makes it clear that the first event was completed before the second one occurred. Note that the events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before my plane landed, my parents **had left** for the airport.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

The future perfect tense consists of *will have* followed by the past participle of the main verb. This tense, which is rarely used, describes a future action or event that will be completed BEFORE a second future action, event, or time. The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an event completed before a second event.

The game **will have begun** before we get to the stadium.

Note that the two events can also be stated in reverse order.

Before we get to the stadium, the game **will have begun**.

The following sentence uses the future perfect tense to describe an action completed before a specific time in the future.

They **will have left** the deli by one o'clock.

The Three Progressive Tenses

The progressive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. The present progressive uses the present tense of *be*, the past progressive uses the past tense of *be*, and the future progressive uses the future tense of *be*.

The progressive tenses are used to describe an action in progress (hence the name **progressive**) at some present, past, or future time.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The present progressive tense consists of *am*, *are*, or *is* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense can describe an action at the precise moment that the sentence is spoken.

Turn the music down! I **am reading** a book.

The present progressive tense can also refer to a span of time that includes the present.

The Cardinals **are winning** 4–1.

In addition, the tense is often used to describe future plans or events.

We **are going** to Paris this June.

Hurry, the taxi **is coming** in ten minutes.

PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The past progressive tense consists of *was* or *were* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense refers to an action that took place at or during some time in the past, whether it occurred at a specific moment or during a span of time in the past.

I **was sitting** at my desk by 9 o'clock.

During the game, she **was knitting** a scarf.

The time in the past can be defined by another event.

We **were eating** dinner when we heard the news.

The past progressive tense can also be used in an adverbial clause.

We heard the news while we **were eating** dinner.

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE

The future progressive tense consists of *will be* followed by the present participle of the main verb. This tense describes an activity that will occur at some time in the future, whether it will occur at a specific moment or, more commonly, during a span of time in the future.

Their plane **will be leaving** at 6:35.

During the school year, I **will be spending** every weekend studying.

Often, the future time is defined by a present tense adverbial clause.

Dad **will be sitting** on a bench while we are shopping.

The Intensive Tenses

The so-called intensive tenses consist of a form of the helping verb *do* followed by the base form of the main verb. The present intensive tense is formed with *do* or *does*, and the past intensive tense is formed with *did*. There is no future intensive tense, nor is the intensive used in the progressive tenses.

The intensive tenses are used in three ways.

- (1) They emphasize the fact that the action of the verb is or was actually performed.

She **does swim** for an hour every morning.

I **did read** the novel.

- (2) The intensive tenses are used with *not* to form the negative of the simple present and past tenses.

They **do not go** to the library anymore.

We **did not see** Larry at the mall.

- (3) The intensive tenses are used to ask simple yes/no questions.

Does the teacher **speak** loudly enough?

Did all the children **write** about their summer vacation?

The Passive Voice

In traditional grammar, verbs have **voice**. Voice is determined by whether the subject is the performer of the action of the verb (**active voice**) or the receiver of the action (**passive voice**). Compare the following sentences.

ACTIVE VOICE	The dog bit the man.
PASSIVE VOICE	The man was bitten by the dog.

In the active voice sentence, the subject (the dog) performs the action of biting. In the passive voice sentence, the subject (the man) does not perform the action of biting; instead, he is the receiver of the action. The *by* phrase is not necessary and is, in fact, usually not used.

The passive voice is easily recognized, because it uses a form of the helping verb *be* immediately followed by the past participle form of the main verb—a combination found only in passive voice sentences.

PRESENT TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow is hurt .
PAST TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow was hurt .
FUTURE TENSE PASSIVE	My elbow will be hurt .

The progressive tenses may be used in the passive voice, although the future progressive tense usually sounds awkward.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	A movie is being shown .
PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	A movie was being shown .
FUTURE PROGRESSIVE TENSE PASSIVE	? A movie will be being shown .

The passive voice has two primary uses.

(1) It is used to switch attention from the subject of an active voice sentence to another part of the sentence (usually, but not always, the direct object).

ACTIVE VOICE	The authors sent the manuscript to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	The manuscript was sent to Marisa.
PASSIVE VOICE	Marisa was sent the manuscript.

(2) The passive voice is used when the performer of the verb's action is not known.

This wool was spun in Italy.
The car was stolen yesterday afternoon.

VERB COMPLEMENTS

We use the term **complement** as a collective word for all the different grammatical structures required by verbs to make a grammatical sentence. **Complement** is much broader than the term **transitive**. In traditional grammar, a transitive verb must be followed by a direct or indirect object. The term **complement**, however, includes not only objects, but predicate adjectives, predicate nouns, infinitives, several types of clauses, and several types of adverbs. A verb may require one complement or more than one complement to make a grammatical sentence. Many intransitive verbs require no complement at all, for example, the intransitive verb *wept* in *John wept*.

The verb *put* with the sense “place, set” takes the double complement OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE, illustrated by the following sentence.

I put my keys *on the dresser*.

If either complement is deleted, the sentence is ungrammatical.

- ✗ I put *on the dresser*.
- ✗ I put *my keys*.

When you use the verb *put* to mean “place, set,” you must put SOMETHING (an object) SOMEWHERE (an adverb of place).

Most English verbs may be used with more than one type of complement. The choice of complement type is determined by the particular meaning of a verb. If the meaning of the verb changes, the complement type(s) may change too, and vice versa: If the complement type changes, the verb’s meaning often changes.

To illustrate the interconnection between verb meaning and complement type, consider the complements for the verb *hide*.

<p>hide <i>keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself</i></p>	<p>The kids were hiding behind the tree. The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.</p>
<p>hide _____ <i>put out of sight, conceal</i> OBJECT</p>	<p>The old lady hid her money under her mattress. Janet hid her face behind the newspaper.</p>
<p>hide _____ <i>keep secret</i> OBJECT WH-CLAUSE</p>	<p>I tried to hide my confusion by changing the subject. They wanted to hide what they had done.</p>
<p>hide _____ <i>keep from being seen</i> OBJECT PASSIVE</p>	<p>A sign hid the entrance to his office. My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.</p>

There are as many entries for a verb as there are distinct meanings, four in the case of *hide*. Each entry has its own group of complements that can be used with that particular meaning, including the possibility of no complement, as in the first entry for *hide*.

If a verb is followed by a blank line (____), the verb with that particular meaning requires a complement to make the sentence grammatical. The types of complements that the meaning requires are given in small capital letters as subentries. For example, the third meaning of *hide* (“keep secret”) can take either of two different complements: an OBJECT or a WH-CLAUSE (a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word). To the right of the complement type are one or more sentences illustrating use of the complement. The words of the sentence that correspond to the complement are in bold. Using the third entry for *hide*, **my confusion** is an example of an OBJECT complement and **what they had done** is an example of a WH-CLAUSE complement. (See “Guide to Complements and Phrasal Verbs” on page 19.)

If a verb is NOT followed by a blank line, it is **intransitive**, that is, it does not require a complement to make the sentence grammatical. In this book, the intransitive meanings of a verb are listed before the meanings that require complements. In the example of *hide*, the fact that the first meaning (“keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself”) is not followed by a blank line means that the verb with this particular meaning is intransitive. In the example sentence *The kids were hiding behind the tree*, the adverbial expression *behind the tree* is not obligatory; the sentence would still be grammatical if we deleted it.

The kids were hiding.

Most of the complement types in this book will be familiar to you, but some may require further explanation. Following is a list of special terms that you will encounter in the description of complements.

THAT-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with *that*.

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE This term includes both present participles and gerunds (present participles modified by a possessive noun or pronoun).

Nothing beats **having lots of money in your wallet**. (PRESENT PARTICIPLE)
That beats **my trying to do it myself**. (GERUND)

WH-CLAUSE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word (*who, whom, whose, what, which, when, where, why, and how* (which does not actually begin with *wh*)), as well as compounds of these words (*whoever, whomever, whatever, etc.*).

Did you hear **who won the game**?
We will grow **what sells the best**.
They will drink **whatever is available**.

WH-INFINITIVE This is a noun clause beginning with a *wh*-word followed by an infinitive.

I told them **where to go**.
Dad taught us **how to tie knots**.

Complement Types

This book uses 16 basic, or single-element, complement types, which appear in bold in the example sentences. Many of these basic complement types can be combined and used together.

Single Grammatical Element Complements

ADVERB OF TIME	The fiscal year runs from July 1 to June 30 .
ADVERB OF PLACE	He felt in his pockets for the key.
ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	The refugees fled into the woods .
ADVERB OF MANNER	He reads too softly for everyone to hear .
OBJECT	I hurt my shoulder .
for/in/of/to/with/etc. OBJECT	The condemned man was pleading for his life . The problem lies with senior management .
REFLEXIVE PRONOUN	I flung myself into jazz.
PREDICATE NOUN	Her father was a famous artist .
PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The moon was bright .
INFINITIVE	We sought to find a better solution for the problem .
THAT-CLAUSE	The police proved that the driver was lying .
WH-CLAUSE	We will soon know who will get the job . We will soon know where the new office will be .
WH-INFINITIVE	The author forgot how to put the quotation marks . I forget how to change my password .
PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I can't stand not knowing what happened .
PAST PARTICIPLE	We felt overwhelmed by the experience .
DIRECT QUOTATION	"Good morning," she said. "We're glad you're here."

Multiple Grammatical Element Complements

The following multiple element complements are commonly used. One complement (usually the first) is in bold and the other in bold italic.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE	We left the children <i>at home</i> .
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM	He drove us <i>to the station</i> . A policeman directed the traffic <i>onto a side street</i> .
INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT	The driver gave us directions . He did us a big favor .
to PARAPHRASE	The driver gave directions <i>to us</i> .
for PARAPHRASE	He did a big favor <i>for us</i> .
OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN	The accident left him a broken man .
OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE	The movie left me confused .
OBJECT + INFINITIVE	I found the new job to have its limitations .
OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE	I had the kids put away their toys .
OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE	We bet five dollars that you can't eat the entire cake .
OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE	I told my friends what they should expect .
OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE	I told my friends what to expect .
OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE	I caught them sleeping on the job .
OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE	Someone must have seen the car stolen .

Other combinations may be used by certain verbs. Note that OBJECT is divided into INDIRECT OBJECT and DIRECT OBJECT complements for certain verbs, like *give* and *do* above.

PHRASAL VERBS

A **phrasal verb** is a verb + particle (an adverb or preposition) combination that has a meaning different from the combined meanings of the verb and particle. For example, the verb *put* can mean “place, set,” “insert,” “cause to be in a certain condition/state,” and “express, say.” When combined with *on*, it can have several different meanings. Four of the meanings for *put on* are given here with example sentences.

<i>deceive</i> [someone]	Don't believe him; he's just putting you on .
<i>dress in</i> [clothing]	Will I need to put my coat on ?
<i>add</i>	Uncle Nelson has put on quite a bit of weight.
<i>start</i> [something] playing	We put on some rock music for Dad.

None of the ordinary meanings of *put* and *on* indicate that these words used together would have the meanings above. That is why we call phrasal verbs **idiomatic**.

English abounds with phrasal verbs. In fact, there are many more phrasal verbs in English than nonphrasal verbs. Because they are idiomatic, phrasal verbs can be difficult for English learners.

Not all verb + particle combinations are phrasal verbs. In some cases, the particle is used as a preposition that doesn't change the basic meaning of the verb. *Dive for* is an example.

dive _____ <i>plunge quickly, lunge</i>	The shortstop dove for the ball .
for OBJECT	

In the sentence above, *for* doesn't change the meaning of *dive*. For this reason, *dive for* is not considered a phrasal verb, and it is included in the Complements section instead.

14 PHRASAL VERBS

Some verbs, when followed by a complement, must always be used with a particular preposition; for example, *cling* is always used with *to*.

cling _____ *adhere, hold on tightly*
to OBJECT

He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued.
The ivy was clinging **to the wall**.

Since *cling* must always be used with *to* when it is followed by a complement, *cling to* is included in the Complements section.

Separable and Inseparable Phrasal Verbs

Many phrasal verbs take no object.

catch on *become popular*

Jazz caught on in the early 1900s.

give out *wear out, stop operating*

The refrigerator gave out after 21 years.

For these phrasal verbs, the particle must be placed immediately after the verb.

Most phrasal verbs, however, take an object. For some of these, the particle can be placed after the object—away from the verb—and for others, the particle must be placed directly after the verb. There are no simple rules for determining whether the particle is placed after the verb or after the object.

Generally, if the particle is considered a preposition, it must be placed after the verb; this type of phrasal verb is called **inseparable**. However, if the particle is considered an adverb, it can, and sometimes **MUST**, be placed after the object; this type of phrasal verb is called **separable**. Most phrasal verbs are separable.

INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB

Our success **is riding on** the merger. (“depend on”)

SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERB

My brother **is putting on** his coat. (“dress in”)

In the first sentence, *on* is considered a preposition, and therefore it cannot be placed after the object *the merger*.

X Our success **is riding** the merger **on**.

In the second example, *on* is considered an adverb, and therefore it can be placed after the object *his coat*.

My brother **is putting** his coat **on**.

For separable phrasal verbs, the particle can be placed after the verb or after the object. There is an important exception, however: If the object is a pronoun, the particle **MUST** be placed after the object.

My brother **is putting** it **on**.

X My brother **is putting on** it.

You can test whether a phrasal verb is separable or inseparable by using a pronoun as its object: If the particle **MUST** be placed after the pronoun object, the phrasal verb is separable; otherwise, it is inseparable.

Note that if the object of a separable phrasal verb is a long noun phrase, it is better to place the particle after the verb.

Don't **throw away** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing.

? Don't **throw** the lamp that I spent four hours fixing **away**.

You can often determine whether a phrasal verb is separable by knowing whether the particle is considered an adverb or a preposition. In examples on the preceding page, *on* is used both as a preposition (*ride on*) and as an adverb (*put on*). However, some particles are almost always used as prepositions; these generally form inseparable phrasal verbs.

across	into
after	of
against	to
at	upon
between	with
for	

The club **leaped at** Kyle's offer.
 X The club **leaped** Kyle's offer **at**.
 Acid was **eating into** the countertop.
 X Acid was **eating** the countertop **into**.

Some particles are almost always used as adverbs; these particles generally form separable phrasal verbs.

ahead	forth
aside	in
away	off
back	out
down	up

We **put off** the meeting until Friday.
 We **put** the meeting **off** until Friday.
 We **put it off**.
 A young attorney **drew up** my will.
 A young attorney **drew** my will **up**.
 A young attorney **drew** it **up**.

Other particles are separable with some verbs and inseparable with others.

about	on
along	over
around	through
behind	under
by	

See the examples with *ride on* and *put on* on the previous page.

To indicate a separable phrasal verb, a blank line with **SEP** is used for the complement (object).

break <u>SEP</u> up put an end to	Two students broke the fight up.
	Two students broke up the fight.
	Two students broke it up.

An inseparable phrasal verb is indicated by a blank line (without **SEP**) after the particle.

break for _____ interrupt one's activities for	Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.
---	--------------------------------------

A phrasal verb may have more than one particle. If there are two or more particles, the last particle is almost always a preposition with its own object. For phrasal verbs like this, the object follows the last particle.

break up with _____ end a romance with	Allison broke up with Todd.
---	-----------------------------

The Most Common Phrasal Particles

Following is a list, with examples, of the particles most commonly used in phrasal verbs.

across

come across _____ *find by accident* She **came across** her high school yearbook.

after

keep after _____ *nag, harass* Mom **keeps after** us about our homework.

along

bring SEP along _____ *have [someone] come along* Be sure to **bring** a friend **along** on the tour.

around

get around _____ *avoid* He **got around** the problem by installing new software.

aside

cast SEP aside _____ *discard, throw away* The soldier **cast aside** his rifle and ran.

at

leap at _____ *accept eagerly* The class **leaped at** Hilary's offer to bake a cake.

away

dream SEP away _____ *spend [time] idly* Let's sit on the riverbank and **dream away** the day.

back

cut SEP back _____ *shorten* We must **cut** the shrubs **back** after they flower.

behind

fall behind (on _____) _____ *lag behind* They **were falling behind on** the rent.

between

come between _____ _____ *cause trouble between* We can't let a silly quarrel **come between** us.

down

shut SEP down _____ *close permanently* Management **shut** the garment factory **down**.

for

go for _____ _____ *be attracted by* She **goes for** men with beards.

forth

put SEP forth _____ _____ *propose, suggest* Johanna **put forth** her plan to save the black-footed ferret.

in

hold SEP in _____ _____ *suppress* The candidate is good at **holding** his emotions **in**.

in on

break in on _____ _____ *interrupt* I hate to **break in on** your conversation, but I'm starving.

into

get into _____ _____ *be admitted to* Our daughter **got into** medical school.

of

come of _____ _____ *result from* What **came of** your threat to retire?

off

run SEP off _____ _____ *print, make copies of* I **ran** several extra sets **off** for you.

on bring <u>SEP</u> on <i>cause to appear</i>	It's time to bring on the final act.
out leave <u>SEP</u> out <i>omit, exclude</i>	Please leave out the reference to Uncle Harold.
out of get out of _____ <i>avoid, escape</i>	She got out of piano lessons three weeks in a row.
over make <u>SEP</u> over <i>change the appearance of</i>	The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.
through come through _____ <i>survive</i>	The hostages came through the ordeal unhurt.
to see to _____ <i>take care of</i>	The janitor saw to the overturned trash cans.
under fall under _____ <i>be influenced/controlled by</i>	The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.
up wind <u>SEP</u> up <i>bring to an end</i>	We wound up the meeting by 8 o'clock.
up on catch _____ up on <i>bring up-to-date about</i>	The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.
upon hit upon _____ <i>discover</i>	She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.
with bear with _____ <i>be patient with</i>	Please bear with me while I think this over.

Note the double particles *in on*, *out of*, and *up on* in the list above.

Verbs of Motion

Verbs of motion typically form many phrasal verbs with particles considered to be adverbs. This is listed as the first entry in the Phrasal Verbs section.

keep SEP **away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.**
remain in a specified location

Keep away from the edge of the bluff.
My parents are coming—keep down!

keep SEP **away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.** *cause to remain in a specified location*

Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn?
It's raining; keep the children in.

EXPRESSIONS

An Expressions section is often included on verb pages where space permits. The entries are common idiomatic set phrases that are especially useful to the English learner.

GUIDE TO CONJUGATIONS

①
118②
send③
send | sends · sent · have sent④
☑ IRREGULAR

⑤ PRESENT

I send	we send
you send	you send
he/she/it sends	they send

⑦ • *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

PAST

I sent	we sent
you sent	you sent
he/she/it sent	they sent

• *They sent us a nice note.*

⑧ PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sent

PAST PERFECT ... had sent

⑥ PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sending	we are sending
you are sending	you are sending
he/she/it is sending	they are sending

• *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending	we were sending
you were sending	you were sending
he/she/it was sending	they were sending

• *She was sending her children to a private school.*

FUTURE ... will send

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sent

⑨ PAST PASSIVE

I was sent	we were sent
you were sent	you were sent
he/she/it was sent	they were sent

• *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

- This is the verb number.
 - This is the base form of the verb. If this were a Top 30 Verb, there would be an additional page for Complements, Phrasal Verbs, and Expressions, and both pages would have a Top 30 Verb icon at the bottom.
 - These are the principal parts of the verb: present | third-person singular present · past · past perfect (containing the past participle).
 - This indicates whether a verb may form its past and past participle regularly. Some verbs, like *shine* (No. 125), have both regular and irregular forms.
 - Five tense paradigms are shown in the table format familiar to most English learners, where row and column represent verb person and number, respectively. These five tenses were chosen because they are the most frequently used.
 - Some verbs are never used in the progressive tenses, like *know* (No. 86). For these verbs, the progressive forms are not given. We only show forms that an English learner might be expected to use in ordinary conversation or writing.
 - An example sentence is supplied for each tense shown.
 - The forms for these five tenses are displayed in single lines with no pronouns. Thus, all nine simple, progressive, and perfect tenses in the active voice are shown (see pages 6–9), plus the most frequently used passive tense.
 - Some verbs are never used in the passive voice, like *lie* (No. 92); no forms are given for these. Other verbs cannot have a personal subject in the passive voice, like *knit* (No. 85); only *it* and *they* forms are given for these. Some writers, of course, may use these personal passive forms in highly figurative or poetic senses. However, because an English learner might be led to use these forms incorrectly, we do not show them.
- Some verbs are only used in the passive voice when they are part of a phrasal verb, like *dream* (No. 46). Because this is a valid use of the passive, all forms are shown for these verbs.

GUIDE TO COMPLEMENTS AND PHRASAL VERBS

- 1 This meaning of *give* requires no complement.
- 2 The blank line indicates that this meaning of *give* requires a complement. Either the single complement OBJECT or the double complement INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT may be used.
- 3 The object in the example sentence is bold.
- 4 One element in a double complement is italicized to distinguish the two complements. The INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT construction may have a *for* PARAPHRASE, as shown below.
- 5 The direct object is bold, and the indirect object is bold italic (corresponding to the italic in the complement name).
- 6 A passive-voice variation is often given for an example sentence.
- 7 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires no complement.
- 8 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The SEP on the blank line indicates that the phrasal verb is separable (see pages 14–15).
- 9 This use of *give out* as a phrasal verb requires a complement. The blank line without SEP indicates that the phrasal verb is inseparable (see pages 14–15).

Complement types are not identified in the Phrasal Verbs section, since virtually every complement of a phrasal verb functions as an object of the verb, whether it is an OBJECT, REFLEXIVE PRONOUN, or PRESENT PARTICIPLE. Bold and bold italic are not used in example sentences in the Phrasal Verbs section.

The Expressions section (not shown here) includes a blank line for a required complement.

COMPLEMENTS

① give *yield, collapse*

give ② host
OBJECT

④ INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
for PARAPHRASE

⑥ PASSIVE

give _____ *devote*
OBJECT + TO OBJECT

The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.

We will give **③** *the reception* in his honor.

I gave *my parents* a **surprise party**.
We gave *the seniors* a **graduation party**. ⑤

I gave a **surprise party** *for my parents*.
We gave a **graduation party** *for the seniors*.

A graduation party was given for the seniors.
The seniors were given a graduation party.

Marvin gave **his whole life** *to the cause of justice*.

PHRASAL VERBS

give SEP away *betray*

give in (to _____) *surrender*
(to [someone/something])

⑦ give out *come to an end*
give out *wear out, stop operating*

⑧ give SEP out *distribute*

⑨ give out _____ *produce*

give SEP up *stop, cease*

give SEP up *surrender, yield*

A club member gave away our secret meeting place.

After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in. Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.

The settlers' food gave out after three weeks.

After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.

C.J. gave out the president's itinerary.

This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.

Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.

Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages.

An hour later, he gave himself up.

This page intentionally left blank

188

ENGLISH IRREGULAR VERBS

Conjugations
Complements
Phrasal Verbs
Expressions

TOP 30 VERBS

The following thirty verbs have been selected because of their semantic and syntactic richness, both in their basic meanings and complements and in their phrasal verbs. A full page of example sentences provides guidance on correct usage and immediately precedes or follows the conjugation/complements page.

	Verb no.
be	3
bear	4
blow	21
break	22
bring	24
catch	31
come	37
cut	40
do	44
feel	52
find	54
get	68
give	70
go	71
have	76
hold	81
keep	83
leave	89
make	95
put	104
read	106
run	112
see	115
set	119
show	128
stand	150
strike	157
take	166
throw	173
write	188

PRESENT

I arise we arise
 you arise you arise
 he/she/it arises they arise

• *He arises every morning at the same time.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am arising we are arising
 you are arising you are arising
 he/she/it is arising they are arising

• *George is slowly arising from the sofa.*

PAST

I arose we arose
 you arose you arose
 he/she/it arose they arose

• *I always arose before seven on school days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was arising we were arising
 you were arising you were arising
 he/she/it was arising they were arising

• *He was just arising when the phone rang.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has arisen

PAST PERFECT ... had arisen

FUTURE ... will arise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be arising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have arisen

PAST PASSIVE

Arise is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *arise* is interchangeable with *rise* in most meanings and uses. See verb No. 111.

arise *get out of bed*

I usually arise around six.
 Nobody arises early on weekends.

arise *stand/spring up, move upward*

The audience always arises when the president enters the room.
 Rebecca arose from the sofa gracefully.
 The dolphins arose from the water.
 A cloud of dust arose from the ruins.
 He arose out of inner-city poverty to become mayor.

arise *come into being*

The rumor arose when Rob had to appear in court.
 A new controversy about ethanol has arisen since the meeting.

arise ____ *originate*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The spring arises **behind our house**.
 These glaciers arise **in the Alps**.
 Birds arose **from small specialized dinosaurs**.
 Prejudice arises **from ignorance and unfamiliarity**.

awake(n)

awake | awakes · awaked · have awaked
 awake | awakes · awoke · have awoken
 awaken | awakens · awakened · have awakened

✓ REGULAR
 ✓ IRREGULAR
 ✓ REGULAR

PRESENT

I awake we awake
 you awake you awake
 he/she/it awakes they awake

• *He awakes every morning at seven.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am awaking we are awaking
 you are awaking you are awaking
 he/she/it is awaking they are awaking

• *He is awaking to the danger.*

PAST

I awoke we awoke
 you awoke you awoke
 he/she/it awoke they awoke

• *It awoke bad memories for me.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was awaking we were awaking
 you were awaking you were awaking
 he/she/it was awaking they were awaking

• *They were awaking to a hot morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has awoken

PAST PERFECT ... had awoken

FUTURE ... will awake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be awaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have awoken

PAST PASSIVE

I was awoken we were awoken
 you were awoken you were awoken
 he/she/it was awoken they were awoken

• *We were awoken by the storm.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Awake* and *awaken* have the same meanings and uses. They are similar to *wake/waken* (verb No. 179), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake*, *awaken*, and *waken* are not.

awake *quit sleeping*

The children awoke early.

awake *become aroused*

The crowd's anger suddenly awoke.
 Excitement awoke in everyone.

awake _____ *arouse from sleeping*

OBJECT

The storm awoke **the children** early.

He will awake **everybody in the house** with his snoring.

The commotion awoke **whoever was still asleep**.

WH-CLAUSE

awake _____ *stir up*

OBJECT

The crisis has awoken **memories of the 1960s**.

Sam awoke **Stella's interest in China**.

It awoke **what had been long forgotten**.

I awoke **whatever concern he had felt**.

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

awake from _____ *wake up out of*

Ned awoke from a sound sleep.

awake to _____ *wake up to*

Patsy awoke to the aroma of freshly brewed coffee.

The corporal awoke to the sound and fury of battle.

awake to _____ *become aware of*

She awoke to the possibilities that technology offered.

Dad awoke to the reality of the moment.

PRESENT

I am we are
you are you are
he/she/it is they are

• *William is here.*

PAST

I was we were
you were you were
he/she/it was they were

• *He was the manager for eight years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has been

PAST PERFECT ... had been

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am being we are being
you are being you are being
he/she/it is being they are being

• *You are being very difficult.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was being we were being
you were being you were being
he/she/it was being they were being

• *They were only being helpful.*

FUTURE ... will be

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be being

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have been

PAST PASSIVE

Be is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Be* is also used as a helping verb

• to form the progressive tenses

be + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They were driving down the wrong street.

• to form the passive voice

be + PAST PARTICIPLE

You will be arrested if you drive drunk.

be exist

"I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES]

Oh, let it be.

be _____ exist

there + **be** + PREDICATE NOUN

There was a **policeman** on the corner.

be _____ *have the identity, a property, or a characteristic of*

ADVERB OF TIME

The meeting is **at ten**.

My birthday is **in September**.

The time is **now**.

ADVERB OF PLACE

The principal is **out of the office**.

My parents have never been **to Singapore**.

PREDICATE NOUN

Greg is a **bachelor**.

It is a **streetcar**.

It is **I**, Mother. [FORMAL] / It's **me**, Mom. [INFORMAL]

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Everett is **handsome and rich**.

The school is **excellent**.

be _____ *must*

INFINITIVE

You are **to report to the office**.

Gary is **to be ready at seven**.

PHRASAL VERBS

NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be against _____ *oppose*

The group is against gun control.

be along *arrive* [USED ONLY IN THE FUTURE TENSE]

Fred will be along any minute now.

be around exist

Dinosaurs were around for 150 million years.

be around _____ *be located*

The keys are around here somewhere.

be away *be absent*

The sales clerk is away for a moment.

be behind *lag*

He's behind in his studies.

be down *not be operating*

The server is down, and I can't get my files.



NOTE: Many of the following phrasal verbs are used informally.

be down *be depressed*

be down on _____ *be angry with*

be down with _____ *be sick due to*

be for _____ *support*

be in *be in one's home/office*

be in *be in fashion*

be in on _____ *share in*

be into _____ *be interested/involved in*

be off *not be at work*

be off *not be operating*

be off *be less*

be off *be wrong*

be off *not be taking place*

be on *be operating*

be on *be in effect*

be onto _____ *be aware of*

be onto _____ *be about to discover*

be out *not be inside*

be out *be made public*

be out *be out of fashion*

be out *be asleep/unconscious*

be out *not be permitted*

be out and about *travel around*

be out of _____ *no longer possess*

be out (with _____) *be absent (due to [an illness])*

be out (with _____) *be unable to play/work (due to [an injury, illness])*

be over *be finished*

be through (with _____) *be finished (with [something])*

be up *be finished*

be up *be more/greater*

be up *be risen, be put up*

be up and about/around *be out of bed and moving around*

be up for _____ *be a candidate for*

be up for _____ *be available for*

be up for _____ *be ready and willing for*

be up for _____ *be on trial for [a crime]*

be up on _____ *be knowledgeable about*

be up to _____ *be able to*

I asked her why she was down.

Why are you always down on your brother?

Ellery is down with the flu.

I was for Robert in the last election.

I am for fixing the building up, not tearing it down.

The doctor is in.

Ruffles are in, pleats are out.

Four seniors were in on the prank.

Katrina was into gymnastics in a big way.

The workers will be off for the next three days.

The lights were off in the auditorium.

Sales are off for the third month in a row.

These estimates are off by 50%.

Tomorrow's meeting is off.

The television is on.

I hope Saturday's party is still on.

Oscar is onto your tricks.

The detective was onto something.

You can lock the doors after everyone is out.

The news is out that Alison broke her engagement.

Sitcoms are out, documentaries are in.

He went to bed and was out within two minutes.

You can eat apples, but chocolate is out.

Philip is out and about with his friends.

We're out of coffee—would you like tea?

Half of the third graders are out with the flu.

He was out for two weeks with a bruised elbow.

The baseball game is finally over.

We were through with our homework by 7 o'clock.

Turn in the exam—your time is up.

Food prices are up seven percent.

We'll leave for Kentucky once the sun is up.

The for sale sign has been up for six months.

I had a cold, but I was up and about on the third day.

Samantha is up for class president.

George is up for re-election.

The neighbor's house is up for sale again.

Are you up for a game of cards?

Tori is up for armed robbery.

Veronica is up on all the latest CD releases.

Are you up to cleaning your room today?

PRESENT

I bear we bear
 you bear you bear
 he/she/it bears they bear

• *Alice bears a lot of responsibility for this.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bearing we are bearing
 you are bearing you are bearing
 he/she/it is bearing they are bearing

• *They are bearing up well.*

PAST

I bore we bore
 you bore you bore
 he/she/it bore they bore

• *The monk bore his suffering in silence.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bearing we were bearing
 you were bearing you were bearing
 he/she/it was bearing they were bearing

• *We were bearing a heavy load.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has borne

PAST PERFECT ... had borne

FUTURE ... will bear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have borne

PAST PASSIVE

I was borne/born we were borne/born
 you were borne/born you were borne/born
 he/she/it was borne/born they were borne/born

• *The charges were borne out in today's testimony.*

• *I was born in Richland.*

NOTE: *Born* is the past participle in the sense "give birth to" in the passive voice. *Borne* is used in all other senses.

COMPLEMENTS

bear *produce* fruit

In Ecuador, apple trees bear twice a year.

bear _____ *produce*

OBJECT

These apple trees won't bear **fruit** for three years.

bear _____ *go*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

This road bears **to the left**.

Bear **right** at the next stoplight.

bear _____ *carry*

OBJECT

"Beware of Greeks who bear **gifts**." [VERGIL]

bear _____ *carry/move along*

OBJECT

A strong current bore **the ship** out to sea.

bear _____ *support*

OBJECT

The pillars bear **the weight of the roof**.

bear _____ *be accountable for*

OBJECT

The engineers bear **a heavy responsibility for the disaster**.

bear _____ *endure*

OBJECT

He can't bear **the pain**.

He will bear **a substantial financial loss**.

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I can't bear **for you to leave so soon**.

INFINITIVE

I can't bear **to hear such a sad story**.

(it) THAT-CLAUSE

I can't bear **(it) that you have to leave so soon**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can't bear **hearing such a sad story**.

bear _____ *carry in one's mind*

OBJECT

He bears **a real grudge** against them.

I bear **no hard feelings** toward them.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I bear **him** no malice.

against PARAPHRASE

I bear **no malice against him**.



bear _____ give birth to

OBJECT

PASSIVE

bear _____ have as a characteristic

OBJECT

bear _____ have as an identification

OBJECT

bear _____ behave

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + ADVERB OF MANNER

bear _____ take care of, pay for

OBJECT

bear _____ call for, require

OBJECT

She bore **a son** in 1982.

Lois has borne **three children**.

Three children have been born to Lois.

Rory bears **a scar** on his left arm.

Sasha bears **a strong resemblance** to her mother.

All three wills bore **Uncle Leland's signature**.

He's bearing **himself with dignity**.

My parents bore **all the expenses of my college education**.

The committee bears **watching**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bear down try hard

bear down on _____ press down on

bear off _____ turn off

bear on _____ have to do with

bear ^{SEP} out prove right

bear up survive, endure

bear with _____ be patient with

If you bear down, you'll get an "A" in the course.

Bear down on the pen—you're making four copies.

Bear off the gravel road when you see a large barn.

These observations don't bear on the matter at all.

The testimony will bear this out.

Lila bore up well in spite of the criticism.

The bridge couldn't bear up under such heavy traffic.

Please bear with us while we discuss the matter.

EXPRESSIONS

bear arms possess a weapon

bear fruit yield satisfactory results

bear _____ in mind consider, remember

bear [one's] cross endure one's troubles

bear the brunt of _____ endure the worst part of

grin and bear it endure an unpleasant surprise with good humor

A citizen may bear arms to protect himself.

The discussions will hopefully bear fruit soon.

Our representatives should bear in mind that their decisions affect millions of people.

The cancer took its toll, but Nick bore his cross bravely.

The walnut trees bore the brunt of the storm.

We got laid off, and all we can do is grin and bear it.

PRESENT

I beat we beat
 you beat you beat
 he/she/it beats they beat

• *In the long run, you never beat the odds.*

PAST

I beat we beat
 you beat you beat
 he/she/it beat they beat

• *He beat the rugs outside.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has beaten

PAST PERFECT ... had beaten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beating we are beating
 you are beating you are beating
 he/she/it is beating they are beating

• *I am beating some eggs.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beating we were beating
 you were beating you were beating
 he/she/it was beating they were beating

• *He was beating back a nasty infection.*

FUTURE

... will beat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be beating

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have beaten

PAST PASSIVE

I was beaten we were beaten
 you were beaten you were beaten
 he/she/it was beaten they were beaten

• *The record was beaten by three of the swimmers.*

COMPLEMENTS

beat *pulsate, throb*

My pulse was beating rapidly.
 The drums were beating again.

beat _____ strike repeatedly
 OBJECT

I beat **the drum** in time to the music.
 The jockeys beat **their horses** in the final lap.
 The blacksmith beat **the iron** into swords.
 The sergeant beat **the recruits** into submission.

beat _____ mix by stirring
 OBJECT

Beat **the batter** with a wooden spoon.

beat _____ defeat, win
 OBJECT

The Phillies have beaten **the Red Sox**.
 You beat **the record** easily.

beat _____ be better than
 OBJECT
 WH-CLAUSE
 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Good home cooking always beats **restaurant food**.
 Your idea beats **what I was trying to do**.
 Nothing beats **having lots of money in your wallet**.
 That beats **my trying to do it myself**.

beat _____ confuse, puzzle
 OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

It beats **me how anyone can understand these instructions**.

beat _____ flap
 OBJECT

A hummingbird beats **its wings** up to 70 times per second.

PHRASAL VERBS

beat _____ back/down/in/out/up/etc.
arrive at a specified location sooner than

My sister beat me back to the station.
 They raced to the top of the hill, and Ben beat the others up.
 Our platoon beat back the enemy's attack.

beat SEP back drive back

The warriors beat the doors down with clubs.

beat SEP down cause to collapse

A driving rain beat down on the stadium crowd.

beat down (on _____) fall (on)

A blazing sun beat down on the spectators.

beat SEP off drive away

She beat the would-be robbers off with pepper spray.

beat SEP up attack savagely

Gang members beat the man up and took his car.

PRESENT

I become we become
 you become you become
 he/she/it becomes they become

• *Jackson becomes cross when he's hungry.*

PAST

I became we became
 you became you became
 he/she/it became they became

• *The situation became a real mess.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has become

PAST PERFECT ... had become

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am becoming we are becoming
 you are becoming you are becoming
 he/she/it is becoming they are becoming

• *The kids are becoming tired.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was becoming we were becoming
 you were becoming you were becoming
 he/she/it was becoming they were becoming

• *His old jokes were becoming quite tiresome.*

FUTURE

... will become

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be becoming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have become

PAST PASSIVE

Become is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

become _____ *grow/come to be*

PREDICATE NOUN

The recording became a **huge success**.

Alice became **chair of the department**.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Robert became **quite friendly**.

The weather became **stormy**.

WH-CLAUSE

It became **what we feared the most**.

He will become **whoever he needs to be**.

become _____ *enhance the appearance of, look good on*

OBJECT

Moonlight becomes **her**.

His sneering attitude really doesn't become **him**.

PHRASAL VERBS

become of _____ *happen to*

Whatever became of your plan to start your own business?

I don't know what has become of Mary.

EXPRESSIONS

be becoming on _____ *look good on*

This shade of blue is very becoming on you.

becoming *attractive*

Your dress is very becoming.

That is a most becoming dress you are wearing.

becoming *suitable to*

She gave a eulogy becoming the occasion of her father's funeral.

PRESENT

— —
— —
it befalls they befall

• *Sorrow and pain befall the broken-hearted.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

— —
— —
it is befalling they are befalling

• *A financial crisis is befalling the country.*

PAST

— —
— —
it befell they befell

• *Hardship befell the Jamestown colony.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

— —
— —
it was befalling they were befalling

• *An ecological disaster was befalling the world.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has befallen

PAST PERFECT ... had befallen

FUTURE ... will befall

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be befalling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have befallen

PAST PASSIVE

Befall is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

befall *happen (usually something bad)*

Who knows what evil things might befall?

They blamed him for everything that befell.

befall _____ *happen (usually something bad)*

OBJECT

A tragedy had befallen **the unfortunate family**.

Who knows what terrible curse befell **them**?

A catastrophic earthquake befell **the city** a few years later.

PRESENT

I beget we beget
 you beget you beget
 he/she/it begets they beget

• *Success begets success.*

PAST

I begot/begat we begot/begat
 you begot/begat you begot/begat
 he/she/it begot/begat they begot/begat

• *The king eventually begat an heir.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has begotten/begot

PAST PERFECT ... had begotten/begot

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am begetting we are begetting
 you are begetting you are begetting
 he/she/it is begetting they are begetting

• *His mistakes are begetting a new crop of problems.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was begetting we were begetting
 you were begetting you were begetting
 he/she/it was begetting they were begetting

• *The rain was begetting millions of mosquitoes.*

FUTURE

... will beget

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be begetting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have begotten/begot

PAST PASSIVE

I was begotten/begot we were begotten/begot
 you were begotten/begot you were begotten/begot
 he/she/it was begotten/begot they were begotten/begot

• *A son was finally begotten by the old king.*

COMPLEMENTS

beget _____ father, sire

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Henry VIII begat **one son** by his third wife, Queen Jane.

Mythological monsters were begotten by witches and demons.

beget _____ cause to exist/happen

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Bad behavior only begets **trouble**.

His amazingly good luck begat **envy and resentment** among his co-workers.

Their successes were begotten by a lot of hard work.

PRESENT

I begin	we begin
you begin	you begin
he/she/it begins	they begin

• *He always begins breakfast with coffee.*

PAST

I began	we began
you began	you began
he/she/it began	they began

• *I began to feel uneasy.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has begun

PAST PERFECT ... had begun

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was begun	they were begun

• *Therapy was begun immediately.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beginning	we are beginning
you are beginning	you are beginning
he/she/it is beginning	they are beginning

• *It is beginning to rain.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beginning	we were beginning
you were beginning	you were beginning
he/she/it was beginning	they were beginning

• *We were beginning to get worried.*

FUTURE ... will begin

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be beginning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have begun

COMPLEMENTS

begin start

His meetings never begin on time.
 Meetings always begin with the reading of the minutes.
 The trouble began when Mack called Thack a fool.
 When does the parade begin?

begin _____ start [an activity, event, process]

OBJECT

The chairperson began **the meeting** promptly at 2 o'clock.
 He began **the discussion** with a joke.

INFINITIVE

I began **to fall asleep** during the long lecture.
 The orchestra began **to play**.

WH-CLAUSE

We only began **what absolutely had to be finished**.
 They began **whatever they needed to do**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I began **falling asleep** during the long lecture.
 The orchestra began **playing**.

PHRASAL VERBS

begin by/with _____ start a sequence/process with

The new owners began by firing all the managers.
 Career planning begins with assessing your strengths.

begin _____ by/with start [a process, event] by [doing something first]

Let's begin the meeting with a big thank-you to the organizers.
 The song begins with a reference to fields of strawberries.

EXPRESSIONS

beginner one who is starting to learn something

He's a beginner when it comes to woodworking.

beginner's luck luck of an inexperienced person

Winning my very first case was just beginner's luck.

to begin with first of all

To begin with, there were no eyewitnesses.

PRESENT

I behold we behold
 you behold you behold
 he/she/it beholds they behold

• *In the book, he beholds a heavenly vision.*

PAST

I beheld we beheld
 you beheld you beheld
 he/she/it beheld they beheld

• *They beheld the ancient tomb in silence.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has beheld

PAST PERFECT ... had beheld

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beholding we are beholding
 you are beholding you are beholding
 he/she/it is beholding they are beholding

• *The king is beholding the newborn princess.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beholding we were beholding
 you were beholding you were beholding
 he/she/it was beholding they were beholding

• *The troops were beholding the massacre site.*

FUTURE ... will behold

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be beholding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have beheld

PAST PASSIVE

I was beheld we were beheld
 you were beheld you were beheld
 he/she/it was beheld they were beheld

• *A similar scene was beheld by the lunchtime crowd.*

COMPLEMENTS

behold _____ observe, look at [OFTEN USED IN THE IMPERATIVE]

OBJECT

Behold **your king!**

No one had ever beheld **such an amazing sight.**

The children in the village had never beheld
a battery-operated toy before.

PRESENT

I bend we bend
 you bend you bend
 he/she/it bends they bend
 • *He always bends the rules.*

PAST

I bent we bent
 you bent you bent
 he/she/it bent they bent
 • *I bent my fishhook.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bent

PAST PERFECT ... had bent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bending we are bending
 you are bending you are bending
 he/she/it is bending they are bending
 • *He is bending over backward to help you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bending we were bending
 you were bending you were bending
 he/she/it was bending they were bending
 • *The kids were bending clay into shapes.*

FUTURE ... will bend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bent

PAST PASSIVE

I was bent we were bent
 you were bent you were bent
 he/she/it was bent they were bent
 • *The minister's head was bent in sorrow.*

COMPLEMENTS

bend *become curved/crooked*

The road bends to the right.
 The trees bent in the wind.

bend *stoop, dip*

I bent to pick up the cat's water bowl.
 The rod bent under the heavy load.

bend *distort*

His smile bent into an ugly leer.

bend _____ *cause to curve, change the shape of*
 OBJECT

The archers bent **their bows**.
 The wind was bending **the trees**.
 I bent **the wire** into a hook.
 The magnets bend **the beam of electrons**.
 The rocks bend **the stream** to the far bank.

bend _____ *distort, cheat*
 OBJECT

The storm bent **the windmill** out of shape.
 Politicians bend **the rules** to suit themselves.
 They bent **the truth** in the run-up to war.

PHRASAL VERBS

bend backward/down/forward/etc.
lean in a specified direction

Brad bent backward to dodge the ball.
 She bent down to pet the dog.
 The girl bent forward to get a better look.

bend SEP **back/down/over/up/etc.**
change the shape of in a specified direction

Norvel bent the pins back into place.
 Adrian bent the corner of the page over.

bend over *lean down at the waist*

The class bent over to touch their toes.

bend over backward *do more than required*

The store bends over backward to please its customers.

bend to _____ *concentrate on*

After a break, Jasper bent to his studies.

bend to _____ *give in to*

He bent to the will of the voters and endorsed the plan.

bend _____ **to** *cause to give in*

Cleopatra bent Antony to her will.

be bent on _____ *be determined [to do]*

Helen was bent on going to law school.

EXPRESSIONS

bend [someone's] ear *talk excessively to*

The stranger bent my ear for 45 minutes.

PRESENT

— —
— —
it bereaves they bereave

• *War bereaves us of everything we hold dear.*

PAST

— —
— —
it bereft they bereft

• *Death bereft the family of financial security.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bereft

PAST PERFECT ... had bereft

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Bereave is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Bereave is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will bereave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bereft

PAST PASSIVE

I was bereft we were bereft
you were bereft you were bereft
he/she/it was bereft they were bereft

• *She was bereft when her husband died in an accident.*

COMPLEMENTS

bereave _____ *leave alone/desolate, especially by someone's death*

OBJECT Death bereaves **us all**.

PASSIVE The widow was bereft when she was only 30 years old.

My grandmother was bereft in 1965, the year of my grandfather's death.

OBJECT + of OBJECT The 1918 flu pandemic bereft **countless families of their children**.
Colon cancer has bereft **us of our father**.

PASSIVE The children were bereft **of their parents** when they were infants.

bereave _____ *deprive [someone] of [something]*

OBJECT + of OBJECT Alzheimer's has bereft **him of all rationality**.

The economic crash bereft **us of all our savings**.

PASSIVE The survivors of the crash were bereft **of all hope**.

- REGULAR
- IRREGULAR

beseech | beseeches · beseeched · have beseechd
 beseech | beseeches · besought · have besought

beseech

PRESENT

I beseech we beseech
 you beseech you beseech
 he/she/it beseeches they beseech
 • *He beseeches you to be careful.*

PAST

I besought we besought
 you besought you besought
 he/she/it besought they besought
 • *He earnestly besought her forgiveness.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has besought

PAST PERFECT ... had besought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am beseeching we are beseeching
 you are beseeching you are beseeching
 he/she/it is beseeching they are beseeching
 • *I am beseeching you to change your mind.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was beseeching we were beseeching
 you were beseeching you were beseeching
 he/she/it was beseeching they were beseeching
 • *The Times was beseeching us to vote the mayor out.*

FUTURE ... will beseech

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be beseeching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have besought

PAST PASSIVE

I was besought we were besought
 you were besought you were besought
 he/she/it was besought they were besought

• *The company was besought to not relocate their plant.*

COMPLEMENTS

beseech _____ request urgently, beg, implore

OBJECT

I beseech **your help in this matter.**

PASSIVE

Emergency relief was besought by all the affected cities.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I beseech **you to say nothing of this matter.**

The minister besought **his congregation to help the needy.**

“She besought **him ... to speak the truth.**” [RUDYARD KIPLING]

PASSIVE

The senator was besought by her party **to vote against health care reform.**

PRESENT

I beset we beset
 you beset you beset
 he/she/it besets they beset

• *Crime besets the core of many older cities.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am besetting we are besetting
 you are besetting you are besetting
 he/she/it is besetting they are besetting

• *The enemy fleet is besetting all of our ports.*

PAST

I beset we beset
 you beset you beset
 he/she/it beset they beset

• *Clouds of flies beset the campers.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was besetting we were besetting
 you were besetting you were besetting
 he/she/it was besetting they were besetting

• *Creditors were besetting the firm from all sides.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has beset

PAST PERFECT ... had beset

FUTURE

... will beset

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be besetting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have beset

PAST PASSIVE

I was beset we were beset
 you were beset you were beset
 he/she/it was beset they were beset

• *They were beset by a sea of troubles.*

COMPLEMENTS

beset _____ *attack from all sides* [OFTEN USED FIGURATIVELY]

OBJECT

His financial problems beset **him** constantly.

Peer pressure beset **her** in her struggle to remain drug-free.

She beset **her parents** with regular requests for money.

PASSIVE

All too often, the elderly are beset by multiple health problems.

He was beset by self-doubt.

The owl was beset by a flock of crows.

PRESENT

I bestride we bestride
you bestride you bestride
he/she/it bestrides they bestride
• *He bestrides his horse like a true equestrian.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bestriding we are bestriding
you are bestriding you are bestriding
he/she/it is bestriding they are bestriding
• *The editor is bestriding two different viewpoints.*

PAST

I bestrode we bestrode
you bestrode you bestrode
he/she/it bestrode they bestrode
• *He bestrode the music scene in the 1960s.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bestriding we were bestriding
you were bestriding you were bestriding
he/she/it was bestriding they were bestriding
• *The hitchhiker was bestriding his backpack.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bestriden

PAST PERFECT ... had bestriden

FUTURE ... will bestride

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bestriding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bestriden

PAST PASSIVE

I was bestriden we were bestriden
you were bestriden you were bestriden
he/she/it was bestriden they were bestriden
• *The mountain pass was bestriden by two massive towers.*

COMPLEMENTS

bestride _____ *straddle, sit/stand astride*

OBJECT

The wreck completely bestrode **the narrow country road**.
Our route bestrode **the border between the two countries**.

bestride _____ *tower over, dominate*

OBJECT

“Why, man, he doth bestride **the narrow world** like a Colossus.”
[WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE, OF JULIUS CAESAR]
Lately, China has been bestriding **the manufacturing sector**.

PRESENT

I bet we bet
 you bet you bet
 he/she/it bets they bet

• *Floyd always bets on the Yankees.*

PAST

I bet we bet
 you bet you bet
 he/she/it bet they bet

• *She bet \$20 on Breezy Summit to win.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bet

PAST PERFECT ... had bet

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am betting we are betting
 you are betting you are betting
 he/she/it is betting they are betting

• *I'm betting that you are right.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was betting we were betting
 you were betting you were betting
 he/she/it was betting they were betting

• *They were all betting that he would win.*

FUTURE

... will bet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be betting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bet

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was bet they were bet

• *A fortune was bet by professional gamblers.*

COMPLEMENTS

bet *make a wager*

I never bet.
 They are always betting.

bet _____ *place as a wager*

OBJECT

Jason bet **a fortune**.
 They are betting **a lot of money**.
 We bet **five dollars** *that you can't eat the entire cake*.
 They will bet **whatever they can afford to lose**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

bet _____ *wager [something] with [someone]*

OBJECT + OBJECT

I bet **Floyd 10 dollars**.
 He bet **me dinner at a nice restaurant**.
 We bet **Robert that his team would finish last**.
 I bet **you that you can't do it**.

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

bet _____ *assert [that something will/won't happen]*

THAT-CLAUSE

The company bet **that consumers would like the new design**.
 Marisa bet **that the Dodgers wouldn't win**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bet on _____ *place a wager on [a contestant]*

I'm betting on the gray stallion.
 I'm betting on St. Louis for the convention site.
 I'm betting on St. Louis to be the convention site.

EXPRESSIONS

You bet! *Certainly!* [INFORMAL]

"Can you help me move this sofa?"
 "You bet!"

PRESENT

I bind we bind
you bind you bind
he/she/it binds they bind

• *Duct tape binds the parts together.*

PAST

I bound we bound
you bound you bound
he/she/it bound they bound

• *I bound the essays before shelving them.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bound

PAST PERFECT ... had bound

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am binding we are binding
you are binding you are binding
he/she/it is binding they are binding

• *We are binding the reports with staples and tape.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was binding we were binding
you were binding you were binding
he/she/it was binding they were binding

• *The gears were binding against each other.*

FUTURE

... will bind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be binding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bound

PAST PASSIVE

I was bound we were bound
you were bound you were bound
he/she/it was bound they were bound

• *They were bound by their promises.*

COMPLEMENTS

bind stick, become stuck

The pulley was binding.

bind be uncomfortably tight

This dress is binding.

NOTE: The verb *bind*, when it takes an object, is often used with *together*.

bind _____ wrap, cover, bandage

OBJECT

We bound **the package** with tape.
The printer bound **the books** in red leather.
The doctor bound **my ankle**.

bind _____ fasten together

OBJECT

The secretary bound **the pages** with a clip.

bind _____ cause to stick together

OBJECT

The glue binds **the fibers** together.
The enzyme binds **the calcium ions**.

bind _____ put an edge/border on

OBJECT

He bound **the rug** with cotton tape to keep the edges from raveling.

bind _____ morally/legally obligate/restrict

OBJECT

My promise binds **me**.
His father's will binds **the use of the property**.

bind _____ cause to have an emotional attachment

OBJECT

Duty and honor bound **the company of soldiers** together.

PHRASAL VERBS

bind SEP **off** cast off [KNITTING]

Be sure to bind off the scarf loosely.

bind SEP **over** hold on bail

The judge will bind the suspect over for trial.

bind SEP **up** tie up

The medics bound up the soldiers' wounds.
The old issues were bound up with twine.

EXPRESSIONS

be bound to _____ be certain to
[do something]

It's bound to snow this afternoon.
Erin is bound to be a great lawyer someday.
East Junior High is bound to win the math contest.

PRESENT

I bite we bite
 you bite you bite
 he/she/it bites they bite
 • *Be careful—the dog bites.*

PAST

I bit we bit
 you bit you bit
 he/she/it bit they bit
 • *He looks like he bit into a sour lemon.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bitten

PAST PERFECT ... had bitten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am biting we are biting
 you are biting you are biting
 he/she/it is biting they are biting
 • *The fish are biting this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was biting we were biting
 you were biting you were biting
 he/she/it was biting they were biting
 • *They were biting off more than they could chew.*

FUTURE ... will bite

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be biting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bitten

PAST PASSIVE

I was bitten we were bitten
 you were bitten you were bitten
 he/she/it was bitten they were bitten
 • *I was bitten by dozens of mosquitoes last night.*

COMPLEMENTS

bite cut with the teeth

bite sting

bite be annoying/objectionable

bite take the bait, be tricked/cheated

bite _____ seize/wound with the teeth

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Does your dog bite?

The mosquitoes are biting tonight.

Ouch, that ointment bites.

His criticisms really bite!

The fish are biting in Big Moose Lake.

Do you think the customers will bite?

I just bit **my tongue**.

The neighbor's dog bit **Thomas**.

The puppy was biting **whatever it could reach**.

PHRASAL VERBS

bite into _____ sink one's teeth into

bite (into) _____ hurt in a stinging way

bite SEP **off** remove with the teeth

bite on _____ chew on

bite on _____ be tricked by

Sammy bit into the orange
 and got juice all over his face.

The icy wind was biting into my face.

Susan bit off only a morsel.

Wade bit on his lip as he decided what to do.

Did Dennis bite on your latest ruse?

EXPRESSIONS

be bitten by the _____ **bug** be obsessed with

bite off more than [one] can chew
 undertake more than one can handle

bite [one's] tongue hold back from saying
 something offensive

bite [someone's] head off speak very
 angrily to someone

bite the bullet be brave in a painful situation

bite the dust die, be defeated

Jayne was bitten by the tennis bug.

By opening five stores last year, the owners bit off
 more than they could chew.

Sheila had to bite her tongue to keep from calling
 her boyfriend a stupid idiot.

I broke the copier, and my boss bit my head off.

I bit the bullet and attended my ex-girlfriend's wedding.

How old was the cowboy when he bit the dust?

My first laptop finally bit the dust.

PRESENT

I bleed we bleed
 you bleed you bleed
 he/she/it bleeds they bleed
 • *His nose bleeds at high altitudes.*

PAST

I bled we bled
 you bled you bled
 he/she/it bled they bled
 • *His wound bled for quite some time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bled

PAST PERFECT ... had bled

PAST PASSIVE

I was bled we were bled
 you were bled you were bled
 he/she/it was bled they were bled
 • *He was bled dry by the blackmailers.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bleeding we are bleeding
 you are bleeding you are bleeding
 he/she/it is bleeding they are bleeding
 • *I'm bleeding onto my shirt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bleeding we were bleeding
 you were bleeding you were bleeding
 he/she/it was bleeding they were bleeding
 • *The company was bleeding money.*

FUTURE ... will bleed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bleeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bled

COMPLEMENTS

bleed *lose blood*bleed *seep, ooze*bleed *lose money*bleed *feel sympathy*bleed _____ *draw blood/fluid from*

OBJECT

bleed _____ *extort money from over time*

OBJECT

bleed _____ *lose rapidly*

OBJECT

Her hands and knees were bleeding.

The cut plants bled onto the rug.

The newsprint is bleeding onto my hands.

The automobile industry is bleeding at an unsustainable rate.

My heart bleeds for the widow.

Her heart bleeds at her neighbor's misfortune.

Doctors used to bleed **their patients** regularly.The mechanic bled **the brake line**.Blackmailers bleed **their victims** of all their money.Newspapers are bleeding **money** at an amazing rate.

PHRASAL VERBS

bleed off _____ *be printed so the image goes off the edge of [a page, sheet]*bleed off _____ *remove the contents of*bleed through _____ *show through [a layer]*

The photo of the wolf bleeds off the page.

Irene bled off the air compressor.

The dark blue is bleeding through the coat of white paint.

EXPRESSIONS

bleed _____ **dry/white** *drain of resources*bleed money *lose money rapidly*bleed to death *die from loss of blood*bleeding heart *one who is exceptionally sympathetic toward the underprivileged*

Legal fees will bleed you dry.

The rock star's entourage bled him white.

The entire industry is bleeding money.

If the doctors can't stop the bleeding, the boy will bleed to death.

George is a bleeding heart for the homeless.

PRESENT

I blow we blow
 you blow you blow
 he/she/it blows they blow

• *The wind always blows in the wintertime.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am blowing we are blowing
 you are blowing you are blowing
 he/she/it is blowing they are blowing

• *The wind is blowing my hair.*

PAST

I blew we blew
 you blew you blew
 he/she/it blew they blew

• *He blew up all the balloons himself.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was blowing we were blowing
 you were blowing you were blowing
 he/she/it was blowing they were blowing

• *The fans were blowing the gas out of the chamber.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has blown

PAST PERFECT ... had blown

FUTURE ... will blow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be blowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have blown

PAST PASSIVE

I was blown we were blown
 you were blown you were blown
 he/she/it was blown they were blown

• *The boat was blown off course.*

COMPLEMENTS

blow move with force

blow force air out

blow produce a sound by having air forced through it

blow explode, erupt

blow abruptly fail

blow _____ move/carry away with a current of air

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The wind was blowing softly.

The fans were blowing at low speed.

The horns were all blowing.

The volcano blew with a huge roar.

The tire blew when we were going 55 miles an hour.

The fuse blew when I turned on the iron.

The fans were blowing **the stale air outside**.

The wind was blowing **dirt in my eyes**.

The breeze blew **the boat onto the rocks**.

blow _____ force air at/into/through, fill with air

OBJECT

John blew **his nose**.

The kids were blowing **bubbles** all afternoon.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Compressed air blew **the pipes clear**.

She blew **her hair dry**.

blow _____ produce a sound by forcing air through

OBJECT

The jazzman blew **the trumpet** with all his might.

The referee blew **his whistle** before the ball was thrown.

blow _____ cause to explode

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He blew **the safe open**.

blow _____ botch, fail to keep

OBJECT

I blew **the exam**.

The actors blew **their lines** repeatedly.

The Giants blew **a 14-point lead**.

blow _____ waste [money]

OBJECT

Zack blew **his money** on gambling.

blow _____ leave hurriedly

OBJECT

I'm bored—let's blow **this joint**.



PHRASAL VERBS

blow away/off/out/etc. *be carried by a current of air in a specified direction*

blow SEP **away** *defeat soundly*

blow SEP **away** *affect intensely*

blow SEP **away** *kill with a gun*

blow down *collapse due to a strong current of air*

blow SEP **down** *cause to collapse due to a strong current of air*

blow in / (into _____) *arrive unexpectedly (at)*

blow SEP **off** *ignore, choose not to deal with*

blow out *be extinguished*

blow out *burst suddenly*

blow SEP **out** *extinguish with a gust of air*

blow SEP **out** *damage severely*

blow SEP **out** *defeat soundly*

blow [oneself] out *subside*

blow over *subside*

blow up *arrive with wind*

blow up *explode*

blow up *lose one's temper*

blow SEP **up** *fill with air*

blow SEP **up** *cause to explode*

blow SEP **up** *enlarge*

Janet's hat blew off.

The visitors blew the home team away.

This new poem of yours blows me away.

The gangsters blew the guard away.

The shed blew down in the storm.

The storm blew the shed down.

Well, look who just blew in!

Three strangers blew into town on Saturday night.

Lanny blew off the assignment.

Ramona blew off her friends and left town.

The candle blew out because of the open windows.

The tire blew out, sounding like a gunshot.

Blow the candle out and go to sleep.

Chuck blew out his knee in the first game.

The Lions blew the Tigers out in an exhibition game.

The guests left after the storm blew itself out.

The storm blew over almost as quickly as it arrived.

This crisis will blow over soon.

A storm blew up out of the southwest.

The truck blew up on contact with a mine.

The teacher will blow up if you don't be quiet.

The clown blew up 20 balloons.

The soldiers blew the headquarters up with mortars.

Let's blow the map up to 400%.

EXPRESSIONS

blow a fuse/gasket *become extremely angry*

blow off (some) steam *release a pent-up emotion*

blow [one's] cool *lose one's composure*

blow [someone's] mind *affect intensely*

blow [one's] (own) horn *praise oneself*

blow [one's] top/stack *speak/act very angrily*

blow _____ out of the water *destroy completely*

blow the whistle (on _____) *report wrongdoing to authorities (about)*

blow _____ to bits/pieces/smithereens *blow completely apart*

Natalie blew a fuse when her secretary lost the files.

The players went to a bar to blow off some steam.

I know you're frustrated, but don't blow your cool.

The revelation really blows my mind.

Rebecca is talented, but she never blows her own horn.

The candidate blew his top at the nosy reporter.

The new motorcycle will blow its competition out of the water.

A secretary blew the whistle on the accountant.

A single mortar round blew the police station to pieces.

PRESENT

I break	we break
you break	you break
he/she/it breaks	they break

• *He never breaks his word.*

PAST

I broke	we broke
you broke	you broke
he/she/it broke	they broke

• *They broke every single agreement.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has broken

PAST PERFECT ... had broken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am breaking	we are breaking
you are breaking	you are breaking
he/she/it is breaking	they are breaking

• *We are breaking for lunch now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was breaking	we were breaking
you were breaking	you were breaking
he/she/it was breaking	they were breaking

• *The company was just breaking even.*

FUTURE

... will break

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be breaking

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have broken

PAST PASSIVE

I was broken	we were broken
you were broken	you were broken
he/she/it was broken	they were broken

• *The window was already broken.*

COMPLEMENTS

break fragment, shatter

The delicate cup broke into pieces.
The waves were breaking close to the shore.

break fail in strength/resolve/control/usability

His health broke.
His voice broke with emotion.
The criminals broke under questioning.
The replacement parts broke too.

break begin/appear suddenly

When the storm broke, I was on my bicycle.
Dawn is breaking.

break become publicly known

The news broke this morning.

break end suddenly

Jasmine's fever broke last night.

break become clear

I hope the weather breaks soon.

break _____ fracture, render inoperable

OBJECT

He broke **his left wrist**.
They broke **my cell phone**.

break _____ violate [a rule, agreement]

OBJECT

They broke **the rules**.
We broke **our promise to them**.

break _____ exceed, surpass

OBJECT

He was arrested because he broke **the speed limit**.
They broke **the old record** by four seconds.

break _____ make publicly known

OBJECT

The reporters broke **the news** this morning.

break _____ disrupt, make ineffective

OBJECT

The soldiers broke **formation**.
The noise broke **my concentration**.
She broke **the spell**.

break _____ stop, interrupt

OBJECT

The net broke **the trapeze artist's fall**.
Esther broke **the silence** with a scream.

PASSIVE

The deadlock was broken at 3 A.M.



break _____ solve, figure out
OBJECT

The police broke **the case**.
The scientists broke **the code**.

break _____ give the equivalent of in smaller monetary units
OBJECT

Can you break a **twenty-dollar bill**?

break _____ ruin financially
OBJECT

One more financial setback will break **the company**.

break _____ tame, train to obey
OBJECT

The cowboys broke **the wild horses**.

PHRASAL VERBS

break away leave suddenly

Helene broke away from the rest of the sprinters.

break down become inoperative/ineffective

My car broke down at Sixth and Pine.
Negotiations broke down after three days.

break down become upset

Seth broke down and cried at the news.

break down give in

Lonnie broke down and bought an MP3 player.

break SEP **down** divide into [pieces]

Let's break the sentence down into subject and predicate.

break for _____ interrupt one's activities for

Let's break for lunch at 12 o'clock.

break SEP **in** train [an employee]

Has Marilyn broken Mary in yet?

break SEP **in** use [something] until it functions well

I have to break in a new pair of shoes.

break into _____ enter, usually by force

Thieves broke into the pharmacy.

break into _____ begin suddenly

When she's really happy, Gretchen breaks into song.

break into _____ become engaged in

Bert broke into show business at the age of four.

break into / in on _____ interrupt

I'm sorry to break in on your conversation, but I must go.

break _____ **into** divide [something] into [pieces]

We should break the project into individual tasks.

break off stop suddenly

Aaron's voice broke off in mid-sentence.

break SEP **off** discontinue

The two nations have broken off diplomatic relations.

break out develop

Fire broke out in the kitchen area.

break out be covered with

Dave broke out in a sweat.

break out (of _____) escape (from)

The prisoners broke out of jail in the early morning.

break up fall apart, scatter

The partnership broke up on amicable terms.

break up laugh hard

Every time I hear this monologue, I break up.

break up (with _____) end a romance (with)

Have you heard? Alison broke up with Todd.

break SEP **up** cause to laugh hard

This monologue just breaks me up.

break SEP **up** put an end to

The FBI tried to break up the drug cartel.

Two students broke the fight up.

EXPRESSIONS

break even achieve a balance between income and expenses

The firm broke even in 2008.

break the ice overcome awkwardness/formality

The president broke the ice with a couple of jokes.

top
30
verb

PRESENT

I breed we breed
 you breed you breed
 he/she/it breeds they breed

• *Uncertainty breeds indecision and delay.*

PAST

I bred we bred
 you bred you bred
 he/she/it bred they bred

• *She bred her dogs to herd sheep.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bred

PAST PERFECT ... had bred

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am breeding we are breeding
 you are breeding you are breeding
 he/she/it is breeding they are breeding

• *They are breeding disease-resistant wheat.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was breeding we were breeding
 you were breeding you were breeding
 he/she/it was breeding they were breeding

• *Their ruthless tactics were breeding resentment.*

FUTURE ... will breed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be breeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bred

PAST PASSIVE

I was bred we were bred
 you were bred you were bred
 he/she/it was bred they were bred

• *These mice were bred in a laboratory.*

COMPLEMENTS

breed *mate, produce offspring*

Many animals fail to breed in captivity.
 Mosquitoes breed in stagnant water.
 My guppies are breeding like rabbits.

breed *originate and develop*

Unhappiness breeds on itself.
 Fear bred in the streets of the threatened city.

breed _____ *cause to reproduce, especially for specific characteristics*

OBJECT

They breed **show horses** on their ranch.

PASSIVE

The plants were bred to withstand an early frost.

breed _____ *raise [a child], rear, train*

OBJECT

She bred **her daughters** to have perfect manners.

PASSIVE

William Faulkner was born and bred in Mississippi.

breed _____ *cause to happen*

OBJECT

Familiarity breeds **contempt**. [PROVERB]
 Success breeds **success**.

PASSIVE

Speculation is bred by unregulated risk taking.

breed _____ *be the source/origin of*

OBJECT

Silicon Valley breeds **innovation and technological breakthroughs**.

The Midwest breeds **its share of talented musicians**.

PHRASAL VERBS

- bring SEP **about** *cause to happen*
 bring SEP **along** *have [someone] come along*
 bring SEP **around** *cause to regain consciousness*
 bring SEP **around** *persuade*
 bring SEP **away** *come away with [information]*
 bring SEP **back** *recall*
 bring **before** *cause to appear before [an authority]*
 bring **before** *introduce for consideration by*
 bring SEP **down** *cause to fall*
 bring SEP **forth** *give birth to, produce*
- bring SEP **forth** *make known*
 bring SEP **in** *produce, earn*
 bring **in on** *include [someone] in [an activity]*
 bring SEP **off** *make happen, accomplish*
 bring SEP **on** *cause to appear*
 bring SEP **out** *cause to emerge*
 bring SEP **out** *publish, issue*
 bring SEP **over** *persuade*
 bring **through** *help to endure*
 bring **to** *cause to regain consciousness*
 bring SEP **together** *cause to gather*
 bring SEP **up** *mention*
 bring SEP **up** *raise [a child]*
- bring **up on** *provide in [someone's] childhood*
 bring **up on / up-to-date on / up to speed on** *inform [someone] about*

- How can we bring about change?
 Be sure to bring a friend along on the tour.
 The medic brought the injured man around.
 They brought Andy around on going to Cancun.
 We bring valuable insights away from the speech.
 These photographs bring back lots of memories.
 The guards brought the defendant before Judge Flynn.
 I brought the zoning issue before the city council.
 His own mistakes brought him down.
 Amy expects to bring forth a healthy son.
 Reinforcements brought forth the historic victory.
 The lawyer brought forth two good arguments.
 The subsidiary brought in \$30 million last year.
 The president brought them in on the decision.
 He brought off the biggest upset of the day.
 It's time to bring on the clowns.
 A police siren brings people out into the street.
 She brings out a new novel every two years.
 Alexandra brought Gil over to our side.
 My sister brought her husband through.
 We brought Anne to before the medics arrived.
 We brought the class together for one last party.
 Jackie brought up the idea of having more parties.
 It's not easy to bring up twins.
 Camelia's parents brought her up to be nice.
 Mom brought us up on the Beatles.
 Would you like to bring us up on the latest developments?

EXPRESSIONS

- bring **into play** *cause to be a factor*
- bring **into question** *cause to be doubted*
 bring **into service** *begin to use*
 bring **into view** *cause to be seen*
 bring **to a head** *cause to reach a crisis*
 bring **to an end / a close / a climax** *end*
- bring **to life** *give vitality to*
 bring **to light** *reveal*
 bring **to mind** *recall*
- bring **to [someone's] attention** *make aware of*

- The campaign is bringing Internet strategies into play.
 Reports have brought his character into question.
 We will bring 30 wind farms into service by May.
 The viewfinder brought the mountain into view.
 The theft brings the question of security to a head.
 My new book will bring the case to a close.
 The children want to bring the puppet to life.
 The journalist brought the corruption to light.
 The reunion brought to mind all the good times we had.
 Citizens have brought the issue to our attention.

PRESENT

I bring we bring
 you bring you bring
 he/she/it brings they bring
 • *April showers bring May flowers.*

PAST

I brought we brought
 you brought you brought
 he/she/it brought they brought
 • *They brought us some good news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has brought

PAST PERFECT ... had brought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bringing we are bringing
 you are bringing you are bringing
 he/she/it is bringing they are bringing
 • *We are bringing the books with us.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bringing we were bringing
 you were bringing you were bringing
 he/she/it was bringing they were bringing
 • *They were bringing the dessert.*

FUTURE

... will bring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be bringing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have brought

PAST PASSIVE

I was brought we were brought
 you were brought you were brought
 he/she/it was brought they were brought
 • *This message was brought to you by our sponsor.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *bring* generally indicates movement toward the speaker or toward the focus of attention; compare with *take* (verb No. 166).

bring _____ carry, lead

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

Who will bring **dessert**?
 Bring **the book here**, please.
 I brought **the visitors to their hotel**.
 The coupons really brought **a crowd to the store**.
 You should bring **them back**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

He brought **me my dinner**.
 She brought **us the new account**.
 The sale brought **them a small fortune**.
 He brought **my dinner to me**.
 She brought **the new account to us**.
 The sale brought **a small fortune to them**.
 She brought **us whatever she could**.

TO PARAPHRASE

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

Bring **whomever you want**.
 Bring **whatever you can to the picnic**.

bring _____ cause to be in a particular state/condition

OBJECT + to OBJECT

I brought **the water to a boil**.
 They brought **the meeting to a conclusion**.

bring _____ bear as an attribute

OBJECT

He brought **lots of experience** to the table.

bring _____ result in

OBJECT

The storm brought **ten inches of rain**.
 The drug will bring **nearly immediate relief**.

bring _____ cause

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

What brought **you to apply to 8 colleges**?

bring _____ sell for

OBJECT

Our old car brought **\$350**.
 The sale will bring **a lot of money**.

bring _____ file in court

OBJECT

He brought **charges** against the owners.



PRESENT

I broadcast we broadcast
you broadcast you broadcast
he/she/it broadcasts they broadcast
• *He broadcasts all of their games.*

PAST

I broadcast we broadcast
you broadcast you broadcast
he/she/it broadcast they broadcast
• *The station broadcast the show for 50 years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has broadcast**PAST PERFECT** ... had broadcast**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am broadcasting we are broadcasting
you are broadcasting you are broadcasting
he/she/it is broadcasting they are broadcasting
• *They are broadcasting the debate live.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was broadcasting we were broadcasting
you were broadcasting you were broadcasting
he/she/it was broadcasting they were broadcasting
• *We were broadcasting from Los Angeles then.*

FUTURE

... will broadcast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be broadcasting**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have broadcast**PAST PASSIVE**

— —
— —
it was broadcast they were broadcast
• *The news was broadcast in high definition.*

COMPLEMENTS**broadcast** transmit programming
via radio/TV

They broadcast in Latin America.
They broadcast in Spanish.
We broadcast on the FM dial in stereo.
Shhh! They're broadcasting.

broadcast participate in a broadcast
program

She broadcasts live from Rockefeller Center.

broadcast _____ transmit via radio/TV

OBJECT

They broadcast **news about Asia**.
We broadcast **college football games**.

broadcast _____ communicate via radio/TV

OBJECT

The police broadcast **a description of the suspect**.
The weather bureau broadcast **a storm warning for the region**.
The networks broadcast **that Senator Blather was the likely winner**.

THAT-CLAUSE

The radio broadcast **that all the major downtown freeways were closed**.

WH-CLAUSE

The stations only broadcast **what they think the public wants to hear**.**broadcast** _____ make widely known

OBJECT

I'll broadcast **my marriage proposal** on the stadium scoreboard.

THAT-CLAUSE

Please don't broadcast **the rumor** to everyone you see.

WH-CLAUSE

I model part-time. But I don't go broadcasting **that I do**.Don't go broadcasting **why we split up**.

PRESENT

I build we build
 you build you build
 he/she/it builds they build

• *He builds custom-made furniture.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am building we are building
 you are building you are building
 he/she/it is building they are building

• *They are building a new house.*

PAST

I built we built
 you built you built
 he/she/it built they built

• *They just built a house near us.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was building we were building
 you were building you were building
 he/she/it was building they were building

• *We were building passenger cars on truck frames.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has built

PAST PERFECT ... had built

FUTURE ... will build

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be building

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have built

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was built they were built

• *Our house was built in 1996.*

COMPLEMENTS

build increase in size/intensity

The waves were building ever higher.
 Our debt was building to scary levels.
 Excitement is building over who will be elected.

build _____ construct

OBJECT

Tommy built **the wagon** out of parts he found in the garage.
 We built **a deck** this summer.
 They are building **a communications network**.
 We have built **a good plan**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The prosecutor built **a strong case** against the suspect.

for PARAPHRASE

They built **us a two-car garage**.

We built **them a new investment package**.

WH-CLAUSE

They **built a two-car garage for us**.

We built **a new investment package for them**.

We can only build **what we can afford**.

They will build **whatever the marketplace wants**.

build _____ increase

OBJECT

The campaign built **support** by offering free T-shirts.
 The company is building **their business** one store at a time.

PHRASAL VERBS

build _____ **in/into** make [something] an integral part of

We will build cabinets **into** the laundry room.
 The programmers built security **into** the server software.

build _____ **on/onto** construct [something] as an addition to

We built a deck **onto** the house this summer.

build SEP **up** increase

The politicians built **up** hope among poor people.
 Steven is building **up** leg strength by running five miles a day.

build SEP **up** promote

The agency built Eileen **up** as a pop singer.

EXPRESSIONS

build _____ **to order** construct to individual specifications

The woodworker builds bookcases **to order**.
 Every computer is built **to order**.

PRESENT

I burn	we burn
you burn	you burn
he/she/it burns	they burn

• *He really burns me up.*

PAST

I burnt	we burnt
you burnt	you burnt
he/she/it burnt	they burnt

• *We burnt oak firewood last winter.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has burnt

PAST PERFECT ... had burnt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am burning	we are burning
you are burning	you are burning
he/she/it is burning	they are burning

• *She is burning loveletters from her ex-husband.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was burning	we were burning
you were burning	you were burning
he/she/it was burning	they were burning

• *A light was burning in the window.*

FUTURE

... will burn

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be burning

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have burnt

PAST PASSIVE

I was burnt	we were burnt
you were burnt	you were burnt
he/she/it was burnt	they were burnt

• *My hand was burnt by the hot plate.*

COMPLEMENTS

burn *be on fire*Get out—the building is burning!
A small fire was burning in the fireplace.burn *be destroyed by fire*Our apartment building burnt last night.
The paper and kindling burnt quickly.burn *give off light*

Every lamp in the house was burning.

burn *be/feel hot/painful*Her forehead was burning.
My ears were burning from the cold.burn *become sunburned*

With her fair complexion, she burns easily.

burn _____ *set fire to, destroy by fire*

OBJECT

We burnt **the trash** in the fireplace.burn _____ *damage/injure by heat/fire*

OBJECT

A spark burnt **a hole** in my pants.I burnt **my fingers**.I burnt **myself** on the stove.burn _____ *use as fuel/energy*

OBJECT

Most cars can burn **regular gas**.Soccer players burn **more calories** than golfers.We burnt **whatever we could get our hands on**.

WH-CLAUSE

burn _____ *cause to feel hot*

OBJECT

The salsa burnt **my mouth**.burn _____ *record data on*

OBJECT

We burnt **some new CDs**.burn _____ *defeat, trick, cheat*

OBJECT

The quarterback burnt **the defense** on that play.

I got burnt by the dot-com crash in 2000.

We were burnt in the commodities market.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

burn down *burn smaller and smaller*

The candle burnt down and went out.

burn SEP up *make very angry*

That nasty remark really burns me up.

PRESENT

I burst	we burst
you burst	you burst
he/she/it bursts	they burst

• *He always bursts into tears.*

PAST

I burst	we burst
you burst	you burst
he/she/it burst	they burst

• *He burst all of our hopes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has burst

PAST PERFECT ... had burst

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was burst	they were burst

• *The dam was burst by the heavy rains.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am bursting	we are bursting
you are bursting	you are bursting
he/she/it is bursting	they are bursting

• *I'm bursting to tell you what happened.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was bursting	we were bursting
you were bursting	you were bursting
he/she/it was bursting	they were bursting

• *We were just bursting after Thanksgiving dinner.*

FUTURE ... will burst

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be bursting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have burst

COMPLEMENTS

burst *break, rupture*

burst *be filled to the breaking point*

burst *explode [OFTEN FIGURATIVE]*

burst *give way to sudden emotion*

burst _____ *cause to break/explode*

OBJECT

burst _____ *be very eager*

for OBJECT + INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE

The balloons all burst.

I was afraid that my eardrums would burst from the sudden pressure change.

The auditorium was bursting with students.

The rocket burst above the spectators' heads.

The bushes are just bursting with blossoms.

I felt like my heart would burst.

I was bursting with pride.

The explosion burst **the windows**.

The older kids burst **all the balloons**.

The hurricane burst **the retaining walls**.

We are bursting **for him to tell us**.

I am bursting **for Mary to see what we have done**.

I'm bursting **to know what happened**.

The kids are bursting **to open their presents**.

PHRASAL VERBS

burst in on _____ *interrupt suddenly*

burst in/into _____ *enter suddenly*

burst onto _____ *emerge suddenly in a location*

burst out *explode outward*

burst out _____ *begin suddenly [to do]*

burst (out) into _____ *begin [an activity] suddenly*

burst out of _____ *be too big for*

burst out of _____ *leave quickly*

burst through _____ *break through with force*

The secretary burst in on the private meeting.

The children burst into the room.

The singer burst onto the stage.

When the glass burst out, I was cut by flying shards.

We all burst out laughing at the joke.

After the accident, Kathleen burst into tears.

When I hear bongo drums, I burst out into song.

She was embarrassed to be bursting out of her dress.

At midnight, the partygoers burst out of the hall.

The troops burst through the enemy line.

PRESENT

I buy we buy
 you buy you buy
 he/she/it buys they buy

• *He always buys locally.*

PAST

I bought we bought
 you bought you bought
 he/she/it bought they bought

• *We bought a new car last week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has bought

PAST PERFECT ... had bought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am buying we are buying
 you are buying you are buying
 he/she/it is buying they are buying

• *We are buying a new TV.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was buying we were buying
 you were buying you were buying
 he/she/it was buying they were buying

• *They were buying it on credit.*

FUTURE ... will buy

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be buying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have bought

PAST PASSIVE

I was bought we were bought
 you were bought you were bought
 he/she/it was bought they were bought

• *The house was bought in 1982.*

COMPLEMENTS

buy _____ purchase

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

buy _____ accept, believe, agree to/with

OBJECT

I bought **take-out** for dinner.

We will buy **500 shares of Apex Corporation**.

A dollar buys **less** than a euro does.

I bought **the kids some new toys**.

They bought **us dinner**.

I bought **some new toys for the kids**.

They bought **dinner for us**.

Mom buys **whichever brand is cheapest**.

They bought **our proposal**.

Will the students buy **the idea**?

I don't buy **that** at all.

PHRASAL VERBS

buy into _____ purchase shares of

buy into _____ agree with, believe in

buy SEP off bribe

buy SEP out purchase all assets/
 interests of [a business]

buy SEP up purchase all of

Our investment club bought into
 the Triangle Corporation.

I don't buy into his money-making scheme.

The candidate changed positions; lobbyists bought him off.

We bought out our competitors.

We bought up every copy of the *Times* that had Tim's
 crossword puzzle in it.

EXPRESSIONS

buy _____ for a song purchase cheaply

buy _____ on credit/time purchase now
 and pay later for

buy _____ sight unseen purchase
 without looking at first

buy (some) time delay an action/decision
 in hopes that a situation will improve

She bought this new rocking chair for a song.

Can we buy this refrigerator on credit?

My parents bought a condo in Florida sight unseen.

The owner wants to buy some time while he considers
 all his options.

PRESENT

I cast we cast
 you cast you cast
 he/she/it casts they cast
 • *The statue casts a long shadow.*

PAST

I cast we cast
 you cast you cast
 he/she/it cast they cast
 • *He cast me in the role of the duke.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cast

PAST PERFECT ... had cast

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am casting we are casting
 you are casting you are casting
 he/she/it is casting they are casting
 • *I am casting the play this week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was casting we were casting
 you were casting you were casting
 he/she/it was casting they were casting
 • *We were casting off by 6 A.M.*

FUTURE ... will cast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be casting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cast

PAST PASSIVE

I was cast we were cast
 you were cast you were cast
 he/she/it was cast they were cast
 • *The dice were cast.*

COMPLEMENTS

cast *throw a fishing line/net into the water* He cast wherever he could see fish.

cast _____ *throw*
 OBJECT

The fishermen cast **their nets** off their boats.
 I cast **a line** to the children in the boat.
 The boys cast **stones** into the pond.

cast _____ *direct, focus*
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The fireplace cast **a cheerful light into the room**.
 He cast **a quick glance at his audience**.
 The moon cast **its light on the shimmering lake**.

cast _____ *convey*
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Recent events cast **doubt on our decision**.
 His actions cast **suspicion on his motives**.

cast _____ *choose actors for*
 OBJECT

Roberta has already cast **the play**.

cast _____ *assign a role to*
 OBJECT + AS OBJECT

We cast **him as the hero's father**.
 Senator Blather cast **his opponent as a reckless spender**.

OBJECT + *in* OBJECT

He cast **her in the leading role**.
 Sally cast **Harry in the role of best friend**.

cast _____ *form by pouring liquid into a mold*
 OBJECT

The foundry casts **brass bells**.
 We cast **wax candles** with the children.

cast _____ *deposit [a ballot, vote]*
 OBJECT

Samuel cast **his ballot** for the liberal candidate.

PHRASAL VERBS

cast SEP *aside/away/off* *discard, throw away*

Lisa cast aside her winter clothes.
 The boss cast off all his doubts about the new salesperson.

cast SEP *back* *direct to the past*

The retired teacher cast his thoughts back to happier days.

cast off *push away from the dock*

The cruise ship cast off at 0900 hours.

cast SEP *out* *expel*

The club cast Ollie out for failure to pay dues.

catch _____ draw even with, overtake
OBJECT

catch _____ take/get quickly
OBJECT

catch _____ attract and hold
OBJECT

catch _____ from get [a disease] from
[someone/something]

catch on become popular

catch on (to _____) figure out, learn

catch [someone's] eye get [someone's] attention

catch _____ up in interest/involve [someone] in

catch _____ up (on) bring up-to-date about

catch up on _____ / get caught up on _____
make oneself current about

catch up (to/with _____) get even (with
[someone/something])

be caught short be without money when one
needs it

catch a whiff of _____ smell

catch _____ at it discover [someone doing
something wrong]

catch _____ dead see at any time
[USUALLY NEGATIVE]

catch _____ napping surprise [someone who
is unprepared]

catch _____ off balance/guard surprise

catch (on) fire become ignited

catch [one's] breath rest after intense activity

catch [one's] death of cold become sick with
a severe cold

catch _____ red-handed discover [someone]
doing something wrong

catch _____ with
[someone's] pants down
discover [someone] in an
embarrassing situation

catch wind of _____
hear about

Their Gross Domestic Product is catching **Spain's**.
I tried to catch **him** on the last lap.

Norvel caught **a glimpse of himself** in the mirror.
I caught **sight of Cary** on the subway platform.
Try to catch **some sleep** before you leave.

Lori's poster will catch **everybody's attention**.
The new employee caught **her eye**.

PHRASAL VERBS

The whole class caught
the flu from Jimmy.

The Beatles caught on after *The Ed Sullivan Show*.
Dexter finally caught on to what Delia had meant.
Cal is new at the job, but he's catching on quickly.

I caught her eye from across the room.

Her husband caught her up in his latest scheme.
The crowd was caught up in all the excitement.

The assistant will catch the actor up on the news.

I hope to catch up on my reading when I retire.
Tonight we can get caught up on our sleep.

Will supply ever catch up to demand?
The taxi caught up with the bus at Skinker Blvd.

EXPRESSIONS

Bill was caught short today
and couldn't pay for his lunch.

I caught a whiff of sweet perfume.

They were sneaking cookies, and Mother caught
them at it.

You wouldn't catch me dead in that place.
I wouldn't be caught dead in that place.

The enemy caught our platoon napping.

The question caught Senator Blather off balance.

The kindling finally caught fire.

I just ran four miles—let me catch my breath!

Put on a jacket or you'll catch your death of cold.

The police caught the thief red-handed.

They were taking bribes, and investigators caught
them with their pants down.

We just caught wind of the new energy proposal.

PRESENT

I catch we catch
 you catch you catch
 he/she/it catches they catch

• *The basin catches rainwater.*

PAST

I caught we caught
 you caught you caught
 he/she/it caught they caught

• *I caught a cold over the weekend.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has caught

PAST PERFECT ... had caught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am catching we are catching
 you are catching you are catching
 he/she/it is catching they are catching

• *I am catching the last train.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was catching we were catching
 you were catching you were catching
 he/she/it was catching they were catching

• *The kids were catching minnows in the pond.*

FUTURE ... will catch

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be catching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have caught

PAST PASSIVE

I was caught we were caught
 you were caught you were caught
 he/she/it was caught they were caught

• *The burglar was finally caught by the police.*

COMPLEMENTS

catch begin to burn/operate

The leaves and twigs finally caught.
 The engine coughed twice and caught.

catch become entangled

My sleeve caught on a hook.

catch act as a catcher [BASEBALL]

Molina caught in all four games of the series.

catch _____ capture, seize, trap, snag, entangle

OBJECT

They caught **the thief**.
 We caught **some trout** for dinner.
 The bushes caught **my jacket**.

PASSIVE

I was caught in traffic for 45 minutes.
 Basil was caught in a hailstorm.

catch _____ grasp and hold onto (physically)

OBJECT

I caught **the ball**.

catch _____ understand, comprehend

OBJECT

I caught **the joke**.
 Sorry, I didn't catch **your name**.

catch _____ discover [someone doing something wrong]

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I caught **them sleeping on the job**.
 We caught **the kids smoking in the garage**.
 Zack was caught **breaking into a car**.

PASSIVE

catch _____ board [a vehicle]

OBJECT

I have to catch **a plane**.
 I'll catch **a taxi** at the hotel.

catch _____ become sick with

OBJECT

Everyone caught **a cold**.

catch _____ go to see

OBJECT

We caught **the last performance of the day**.

catch _____ watch, listen to

OBJECT

Did you catch **the game** on TV?

catch _____ meet with

OBJECT

I'll catch **you** later.
 We will catch **him** at the meeting tomorrow.



PRESENT

I chide we chide
you chide you chide
he/she/it chides they chide

• *She chides me for being gullible.*

PAST

I chid we chid
you chid you chid
he/she/it chid they chid

• *The librarian gently chid the children.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has chid/chidden

PAST PERFECT ... had chid/chidden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am chiding we are chiding
you are chiding you are chiding
he/she/it is chiding they are chiding

• *We are chiding them about their terrible coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was chiding we were chiding
you were chiding you were chiding
he/she/it was chiding they were chiding

• *I was chiding him for spending all his money.*

FUTURE ... will chide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be chiding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have chid/chidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was chid/chidden we were chid/chidden
you were chid/chidden you were chid/chidden
he/she/it was chid/chidden they were chid/chidden

• *We were chidden for missing the beginning of the meeting.*

COMPLEMENTS

chide *express disapproval/displeasure*

He is an old grouch who chides constantly.

He chides about the morals of “kids these days.”

chide _____ *reprimand, scold*

OBJECT

Too many teachers chide **their students** over nothing.

I chid **the people who kept talking during the movie.**

PASSIVE

We were chidden for expressing unpopular opinions.

DIRECT QUOTATION

“**Don’t act like that,**” she chid.

“**Well,**” the senator chid, “**we’ll see about that!**”

chide _____ *goad, nag*

OBJECT + *into* PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The manager chid **the tenants *into cleaning up the yard.***

He chid **me *into doing something I didn’t really want to do.***

PASSIVE

We were chid ***into filling out a questionnaire.***

PRESENT

I choose we choose
 you choose you choose
 he/she/it chooses they choose
 • *He always chooses to take Amtrak.*

PAST

I chose we chose
 you chose you chose
 he/she/it chose they chose
 • *They chose a new president.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has chosen

PAST PERFECT ... had chosen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am choosing we are choosing
 you are choosing you are choosing
 he/she/it is choosing they are choosing
 • *They are choosing someone right now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was choosing we were choosing
 you were choosing you were choosing
 he/she/it was choosing they were choosing
 • *They were choosing a new secretary.*

FUTURE ... will choose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be choosing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have chosen

PAST PASSIVE

I was chosen we were chosen
 you were chosen you were chosen
 he/she/it was chosen they were chosen
 • *My candidate was chosen.*

COMPLEMENTS

choose *make a selection*

You need to choose.
 They are still choosing.
 You may choose between lemon and cherry Danish.

choose _____ *select, opt for, prefer*

OBJECT

Giuseppe chose **the toasted ravioli**.
 The delegates chose **Senator Blather**.
 The residents chose **pumpkin pie** over cheesecake.
 The bride chose **satın** for her wedding dress.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

I chose **myself a new computer**.
 My son chose **his mother a present**.
 I chose **a new computer for myself**.
 My son chose **a present for his mother**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

He chose **Ralph as his partner**.
 They chose **Sue as captain**.

OBJECT + *for* PREDICATE NOUN

We will choose **Meg for treasurer**.
 She chose **Sarah for her maid of honor**.

OBJECT + *to be* PREDICATE NOUN

They chose **him to be secretary**.
 They chose **her to give the keynote address**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

He chose **Larry to be his best man**.
 You should choose **Kay to design your book**.

INFINITIVE

We chose **to fly to Denver**.

WH-CLAUSE

He is choosing **what to take**.
 We chose **where we would go on vacation**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We chose **flying to Denver** over driving there.

EXPRESSIONS

choose (up) sides *form opposing teams by having captains alternately select players*
pick and choose *select carefully*

Once they chose up sides, they had to decide which team would bat first.
 Co-op members can pick and choose from a wide variety of Dina's produce.

PRESENT

I cleave	we cleave
you cleave	you cleave
he/she/it cleaves	they cleave

• *Mica cleaves in absolutely straight lines.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cleaving	we are cleaving
you are cleaving	you are cleaving
he/she/it is cleaving	they are cleaving

• *The boat is cleaving the waves at full speed.*

PAST

I cleft/clove	we cleft/clove
you cleft/clove	you cleft/clove
he/she/it cleft/clove	they cleft/clove

• *He clove the log in half.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cleaving	we were cleaving
you were cleaving	you were cleaving
he/she/it was cleaving	they were cleaving

• *The war was cleaving the nation.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cleft/cloven

PAST PERFECT ... had cleft/cloven

FUTURE

... will cleave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be cleaving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cleft/cloven

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was cleft/cloven	they were cleft/cloven

• *A tunnel was cleft through the hill.*

NOTE: This irregular verb should not be confused with the unrelated regular verb *cleave (to)*, meaning “stick/adhere (to),” as in *His tongue cleaved to the roof of his mouth.*

COMPLEMENTS

cleave *split/separate, usually along natural lines*

The best firewood cleaves with hardly any effort.
We found some slate that clove perfectly.

cleave *move smoothly, as if splitting the air/water*

The birds clove and swooped through the air.
The jet clove through the clouds.

cleave _____ *cut something apart by a splitting blow*

OBJECT

We cleft **the logs** into quarters.
They then clove **the cedar** for roof shakes.

PASSIVE

The rock had been cleft for paving stones.

cleave _____ *penetrate/pierce, as if by splitting*

OBJECT

A bolt of lightning cleft **the night sky**.
The boat clove **the waves**, spraying water to both sides.

PASSIVE

The shield was cloven by the Viking in a single stroke.

PRESENT

I cling we cling
 you cling you cling
 he/she/it clings they cling

• *We cling to our beliefs as long as we can.*

PAST

I clung we clung
 you clung you clung
 he/she/it clung they clung

• *He clung to them throughout the ordeal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has clung

PAST PERFECT ... had clung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clinging we are clinging
 you are clinging you are clinging
 he/she/it is clinging they are clinging

• *He is clinging to life by a thread.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clinging we were clinging
 you were clinging you were clinging
 he/she/it was clinging they were clinging

• *The passengers were clinging to the handrails.*

FUTURE

... will cling

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be clinging

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have clung

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was clung they were clung

• *The story was clung to desperately.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *cling*, when not used with an object, is always followed by *together*.

cling *hold on tightly to each other*

The twins clung together under the umbrella.
 The socks were clinging together when I removed them from the dryer.

cling _____ *adhere, hold on tightly to* OBJECT

He clung **to the ledge** until he was rescued.
 The climbers were clinging **to the rope**.
 The girl clung **to her father's hand**.
 The ivy was clinging **to the wall**.
 The price stickers always cling **to the fruit**.
 The molecules cling **to each other**.
 The office was clinging **to outdated software**.

cling _____ *have a strong emotional attachment to* OBJECT

Believers cling **to their faith**.
 Elvis's fans always clung **to him** no matter what.
 They will cling **to whoever their prophet is**.
 They clung **to whatever their leader told them**.

to WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT

I clothe we clothe
 you clothe you clothe
 he/she/it clothes they clothe

• *He clothes his models in the latest fashions.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am clothing we are clothing
 you are clothing you are clothing
 he/she/it is clothing they are clothing

• *She is clothing her bridesmaids in pastel colors.*

PAST

I clad we clad
 you clad you clad
 he/she/it clad they clad

• *She clad herself in a dressing gown.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was clothing we were clothing
 you were clothing you were clothing
 he/she/it was clothing they were clothing

• *He was clothing the actors in medieval costumes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has clad

PAST PERFECT ... had clad

FUTURE

... will clothe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be clothing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have clad

PAST PASSIVE

I was clad we were clad
 you were clad you were clad
 he/she/it was clad they were clad

• *The king was clad in beautiful ermine robes.*

COMPLEMENTS

clothe _____ put clothes on, dress

OBJECT

PASSIVE

They always clothe **themselves** in the oddest fashions.

He was clad in dirty shorts and a rumpled T-shirt.

clothe _____ cover, as with clothing

OBJECT

The decorators clad **the tables** with linen fabric.

clothe _____ provide clothing for

OBJECT

PASSIVE

He could hardly feed and clothe **his own family**.

That store clothes **half of the people in the whole town**.

The flood victims were clad by relief agencies.

PRESENT

I come	we come
you come	you come
he/she/it comes	they come

• *He comes here on weekends.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am coming	we are coming
you are coming	you are coming
he/she/it is coming	they are coming

• *I'm coming as fast as I can.*

PAST

I came	we came
you came	you came
he/she/it came	they came

• *They came to see you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was coming	we were coming
you were coming	you were coming
he/she/it was coming	they were coming

• *The ships were just coming into view.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has come

PAST PERFECT ... had come

FUTURE ... will come

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be coming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have come

PAST PASSIVE

Come is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

come *move toward the speaker*

Please **come** here.
Don't **come** too close—I have a cold.

come *fare, get along*

How's Harry **coming** in his new job?

come ____ *arrive/appear in space/time*

ADVERB OF TIME

The deadline has **come** **all too soon**.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car **came** **over the hill** at 60 miles an hour.

(+ ADVERB OF TIME)

The class **came** **to the chapter on ancient Rome**.

They **come** **home once a week**.

come ____ *extend, reach*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Her skirt **comes** **below her knees**.
His property **comes** **as far as this fence**.

come ____ *originate*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Doris **comes** **from a large family**.
Most malware **comes** **from China**.

come ____ *be available*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The new model **comes** **in three colors**.
The DVD player **comes** **ready to use**.
The computer **comes** **without a keyboard**.

come ____ *reach a state/conclusion*

to OBJECT

The two sides **came** **to an understanding**.
Barney **came** **to his senses** at last.

INFINITIVE

I **came** **to like him** after all.
We **came** **to enjoy walking to school**.
The time has **come** **to say good-bye**.

come ____ *arrive in a particular condition*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He **came** **ready to work**.
They **came** **eager for the show to begin**.

come ____ *become*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The steering wheel **came** **loose** and he lost control of the car.
Sandy's dream of becoming an astronaut **came** **true**.



PHRASAL VERBS

come away/forward/in/out/up/etc.
approach in a specified direction

come about happen

come across/upon _____ find/meet
by accident

come along appear

come along make progress

come (along) with _____ accompany

come around recover

come around (to) _____ agree finally (to)

come at _____ attack

come back be popular again

come between _____ cause trouble between

come down decrease [OF PRICES]

come down be demolished

come down be handed down by tradition

come down to _____ be a matter of

come down with _____ become sick with

come from _____ be caused by

come in become available, arrive

come in _____ finish a contest

come of _____ result from

come off _____ become separated from

come off happen

come on be illuminated

come on begin to be broadcast

come out be made public

come out declare oneself

come out turn out, end up, do

come (out) to _____ amount to

come out with _____ introduce [a product]

come through _____ survive

come to regain consciousness

come to _____ be a matter of

come up increase [OF PRICES]

come up appear for
consideration

come up against _____
encounter, confront

come up for _____
be in line for

come up with _____
find, produce

Marcy came up from the basement.

Melinda came in through the back door.

How did the agreement come about?

She came across her high school yearbook.

We came upon a deer in the clearing.

We'll ask the first person who comes along.

The project is coming along fairly well.

Jayne may come along with us to the grocery.

These instructions came with the new monitor.

I was knocked unconscious, but I soon came around.

He eventually came around to my point of view.

Rudy came at the burglar with his fists flying.

Smaller cars are coming back.

We can't let a silly quarrel come between us.

Gasoline prices are coming down.

The historic inn will come down for urban renewal.

Western philosophy came down to us from the Greeks.

The debate comes down to money.

A third of my classmates came down with a cold.

John's problems come from his lack of control.

The election results are coming in now.

The new encyclopedias will come in tomorrow.

Carrie came in second in the 100-meter dash.

Nothing came of my complaint to the board.

A fender came off my bike today.

The dinner party came off just as we expected.

The streetlights come on at dusk.

When does *Countdown* come on tonight?

The facts came out at the afternoon meeting.

Senator Blather came out in favor of wind farms.

Everything came out fine in the end.

Your repair bill comes out to \$227.46.

All of Ellery's efforts came to nothing.

The company came out with three new workstations.

Randall came through the ordeal of boot camp.

Gertie came to before the medics arrived.

When it comes to idioms, we are the experts.

Stock prices have come up over the past week.

The issue comes up every few months.

Did the issue of slavery come up in history class?

The activists came up against a lot of opposition.

These antique lamps don't come up for sale very often.

The position comes up for election every four years.

She came up with two quarters for the parking meter.

Has the detective come up with a motive yet?

PRESENT

I cost we cost
 you cost you cost
 he/she/it costs they cost

• *The scarves cost more than 50 dollars.*

PAST

I cost we cost
 you cost you cost
 he/she/it cost they cost

• *That mistake cost us dearly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cost

PAST PERFECT ... had cost

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am costing we are costing
 you are costing you are costing
 he/she/it is costing they are costing

• *The delay is costing us a fortune.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was costing we were costing
 you were costing you were costing
 he/she/it was costing they were costing

• *You were costing the company a lot of money.*

FUTURE ... will cost

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be costing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cost

PAST PASSIVE

Cost is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

cost *be* expensive

Going to college really costs.
 Hybrid cars cost, but so does gasoline.
 Lack of training costs dearly.
 Cheap mattresses cost in the long run.

cost _____ *have a price of*
 OBJECT

The new house cost **half a million dollars**.
 My books cost **\$200 a semester**.

cost _____ *cause the loss of*
 OBJECT

Starvation costs **25,000 lives** a day.
 It cost **my job**.
 It cost **his self-respect**.
 The battle cost **the army a lot of good soldiers**.
 The accident cost **me a fortune**.
 The mistake cost **us the contract**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

cost _____ *cause suffering/loss to*
 OBJECT

My hesitation certainly cost **me**.

PHRASAL VERBS

cost SEP **out** *estimate, set a value on/for*

I will cost the entire project out.
 We were costing out the Johnston contract.

EXPRESSIONS

cost a fortune *be very expensive*

It would cost a fortune to move that printing press.

cost a pretty penny *be very expensive*

I'll bet that car cost a pretty penny.

cost an arm and a leg *be very expensive*

This watch cost me an arm and a leg.

PRESENT

I creep we creep
 you creep you creep
 he/she/it creeps they creep

• *Time creeps by when you're bored.*

PAST

I crept we crept
 you crept you crept
 he/she/it crept they crept

• *Old age crept up on us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has crept

PAST PERFECT ... had crept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am creeping we are creeping
 you are creeping you are creeping
 he/she/it is creeping they are creeping

• *The fog is creeping into the hollow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was creeping we were creeping
 you were creeping you were creeping
 he/she/it was creeping they were creeping

• *The soldiers were creeping past the guards.*

FUTURE

... will creep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be creeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have crept

PAST PASSIVE

Creep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

creep *move along close to the ground*

creep *move cautiously/stealthily*

creep *grow along a surface*

creep *shiver from fear/dread*

creep _____ *advance slowly*
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

creep _____ *appear gradually*
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Bob crept away from his pursuers.
 The lion crept toward the antelope.

We crept down the stairs.
 I crept into the kids' room, trying not to wake them.

Weeds were creeping into the flower beds.

The scream made my flesh creep.

Daylight crept **in through the windows**.
 Water from the clogged drain crept **across the floor**.

A sense of urgency crept **through the crowd**.

PHRASAL VERBS

creep by *pass slowly*

creep in/into _____ *enter inconspicuously*

creep up on _____ *advance slowly and imperceptibly toward*

The years crept by when Lawrence was in prison.

A note of resentment crept into his voice.
 Negativity crept into his later writing.

The cat crept up on the mouse.

EXPRESSIONS

creep out of the woodwork *appear after being gone for a long time*

Well, look who's crept out of the woodwork—it's Percy!

PRESENT

I cut we cut
 you cut you cut
 he/she/it cuts they cut
 • *He cuts the lawn every weekend.*

PAST

I cut we cut
 you cut you cut
 he/she/it cut they cut
 • *I cut myself shaving.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has cut

PAST PERFECT ... had cut

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am cutting we are cutting
 you are cutting you are cutting
 he/she/it is cutting they are cutting
 • *I'm cutting class today.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was cutting we were cutting
 you were cutting you were cutting
 he/she/it was cutting they were cutting
 • *We were cutting the staff by ten percent.*

FUTURE ... will cut

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be cutting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have cut

PAST PASSIVE

I was cut we were cut
 you were cut you were cut
 he/she/it was cut they were cut
 • *Our budget was cut substantially.*

COMPLEMENTS

cut *hurt someone's feelings*

His criticisms really cut.
 He really knows how to cut.

cut _____ *make an incision, separate*

ADVERB OF MANNER

A sharp knife cuts **safely**.
 His ax cuts **like a razor**.

cut _____ *undergo an incision/separation*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The dried wood cuts **easily**.

cut _____ *penetrate with a sharp object*

OBJECT

Jill cut **her finger** on a knife.

cut _____ *sever, separate into pieces (slice, mow, pare, trim, dig, etc.)*

OBJECT

I cut **the cake**.
 My husband cut **the grass** this morning.
 I need to cut **my fingernails**.
 The new barber cut **my hair**.
 The backhoe cut **a trench** for a new waterline.

cut _____ *make by chopping/hacking*

OBJECT

We cut **a path** through the dense woods.

cut _____ *reduce the size/number of*

OBJECT

They will cut **my hours** after Christmas.
 We have to cut **the budget**.
 The authors had to cut **the manuscript** by a third.

cut _____ *remove [from a group]*

OBJECT

The coach cut **three players** from the squad.
 The director cut **five scenes** from the movie.

cut _____ *change direction suddenly*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Cut **to the right** just before the railroad tracks.

cut _____ *go directly, take a shortcut*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We can cut **across Mr. Applegate's property**.
 The highway cuts **through a national park**.
 The seniors cut **to the front of the line**.

cut _____ *dilute*

OBJECT

That bartender cuts **whiskey** with tap water.



cut _____ *break, stop*

OBJECT

cut _____ *skip without permission*

OBJECT

cut _____ *record*

OBJECT

cut _____ *fill out and issue*

OBJECT

cut _____ *handle [USUALLY NEGATIVE]*

OBJECT

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The storm cut **the telephone lines**.

Please cut **all the noise**.

He cut **the engine**.

We cut **class** to watch the inauguration.

She is cutting **a new album**.

The secretary cut **a check for \$50.23**.

I can't cut **the 45-minute drive to work** anymore.

Tom can't cut **being a police officer** anymore.

PHRASAL VERBS

cut across _____ *transcend*

cut back *reverse direction*

cut SEP back *shorten*

cut back (on) _____ *reduce*

cut SEP down *chop/saw and cause to fall*

cut down (on) _____ *reduce*

cut in *begin operating*

cut in *interrupt*

cut in *move into a line out of turn*

cut SEP in *mix in*

cut in on _____ *interrupt*

cut SEP off *interrupt*

cut SEP off *move suddenly in front of, block*

cut SEP off *shorten*

cut SEP off *shut off*

cut off/out *stop suddenly, shut off*

cut out *go away quickly*

cut SEP out *eliminate*

cut up *joke, clown, behave wildly*

cut SEP up *separate into sections with a sharp object*

The president's economic proposal cuts across party lines.

The receiver cut back to the middle of the field.

We must cut back the shrubs after they flower.

The department cut back spending in April.

Our neighbors cut two elm trees down.

The doctor told Ed to cut down on caffeine.

We pulled the crank six times before the motor cut in.

The reporter cut in before I finished my first sentence.

The motorist cut in just before his lane ended.

Cut in the shortening with a pastry blender.

The actress cut in on the director.

The protester cut me off in mid-sentence.

A driver cut me off at the curve.

The policeman cut the robbers off at the bridge.

Gerry cut off the knotty end of the board.

When his car overheated, the driver cut off the engine.

The water heater cuts off at 120 degrees.

This party is boring; let's cut out.

I will cut out afternoon snacks for two weeks.

Ken always cuts up when the teacher leaves the room.

Cut the mushrooms up, and then we'll add them to the sauce.

EXPRESSIONS

cut _____ down to size *humiliate*

cut _____ some slack *make an allowance for*

cut _____ to the quick *badly hurt the feelings of*

cut [one's] teeth on _____ *learn/do as a beginner*

cut SEP short *stop suddenly*

His opponent cut him down to size.

He wasn't feeling well, so the boss cut him some slack.

Your nasty remarks cut me to the quick.

The journalist cut her teeth on writing obituaries.

The president cut the press conference short.

PRESENT

I deal we deal
 you deal you deal
 he/she/it deals they deal
 • *He deals in antique furniture.*

PAST

I dealt we dealt
 you dealt you dealt
 he/she/it dealt they dealt
 • *I dealt myself a bad hand.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dealt

PAST PERFECT ... had dealt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dealing we are dealing
 you are dealing you are dealing
 he/she/it is dealing they are dealing
 • *I'm dealing this hand.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dealing we were dealing
 you were dealing you were dealing
 he/she/it was dealing they were dealing
 • *They were dealing illegal drugs.*

FUTURE ... will deal

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dealing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dealt

PAST PASSIVE

I was dealt we were dealt
 you were dealt you were dealt
 he/she/it was dealt they were dealt
 • *Justice was dealt to everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

deal distribute cards in a game

Who's dealing?
 I will deal as soon as everyone sits down.

deal engage in bargaining/negotiation

The union will never deal.
 He only deals if the price is right.

deal _____ distribute [cards]

OBJECT

I will deal **five cards** to each player.
 He deals **the cards** until none are left.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

You dealt **me an awful hand**.

TO PARAPHRASE

He dealt **her three aces**.

deal _____ sell [illegal drugs]

OBJECT

He deals **marijuana** to teenagers.
 The gang deals **stolen prescription drugs**.

deal _____ deliver, administer

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Spike dealt **the intruder a blow to the head**.

TO PARAPHRASE

Fate dealt **him a terrible blow**.

Life has dealt **them some bad times**.

Fate dealt **a terrible blow to him**.

Life has dealt **some bad times to them**.

PHRASAL VERBS

deal in _____ buy and sell

The real estate broker deals only
 in commercial properties.

deal SEP **in** allow to take part

Maurice has free time; let's deal him in.

deal SEP **out** distribute piece by piece

Agnes dealt the cards out three at a time.

deal with _____ behave toward, treat in a particular way

The coach dealt fairly with his players.

deal with _____ handle, take care of

The board agreed to deal with financial matters later.

deal with _____ have to do with, concern

The article deals with early French-American customs.

deal with _____ try to accept/reconcile

Meg dealt with three deaths in her family last year.

PRESENT

I dig we dig
you dig you dig
he/she/it digs they dig

• *He really digs in at suppertime.*

PAST

I dug we dug
you dug you dug
he/she/it dug they dug

• *They dug up a lot of information.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dug

PAST PERFECT ... had dug

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am digging we are digging
you are digging you are digging
he/she/it is digging they are digging

• *I'm digging as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was digging we were digging
you were digging you were digging
he/she/it was digging they were digging

• *The kids were digging in the backyard.*

FUTURE

... will dig

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be digging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dug

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was dug they were dug

• *The foundation was dug last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

dig turn up / remove soil by hand, tool,
or machine

dig search [for something]

dig _____ create [a hole] by removing soil
OBJECT

dig _____ remove from the soil
OBJECT

dig _____ notice, understand, like [INFORMAL]
OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

I have been digging all afternoon.
We will dig tomorrow.

Nicole dug in her suitcase for the shampoo.
I am digging everywhere I can think of.
The accountants are really digging.

The road crew was digging a **trench**.
The dog dug a **hole** in our front lawn.
They have dug **the foundation**.

The farmer dug **potatoes** in the field.
Miners can dig **coal** from the slopes.

Did you dig **that crazy shirt**?
I couldn't dig **all that technical talk**.
Kids don't dig **classical music**.
Did you dig **what he was saying**?
I can't dig **what the teacher is saying**.
Did you dig **who was in that movie**?

PHRASAL VERBS

dig at _____ criticize

dig down/deep be generous

dig in start to work intensively

dig in start eating

dig into _____ investigate thoroughly

dig into _____ start eating

dig SEP **out** uncover by digging

dig SEP **out** obtain by searching

dig SEP **up** uncover by digging

dig SEP **up** obtain by searching

He's always digging at me for my conservatism.

We all must dig down to feed the poor.

There were 23 court cases to study, and the lawyers dug in.
Supper's on the table. Dig in!

The detectives dug into the suspect's background.

The workmen dug into the stew and biscuits.

Tim dug his car out with a snow shovel.

Let's dig out the family photo albums.

We dug 23 arrowheads up in one afternoon.

Reporters dug up a lot of information about the mayor.

PRESENT

I dive we dive
you dive you dive
he/she/it dives they dive

• *The market dives after bad economic news.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am diving we are diving
you are diving you are diving
he/she/it is diving they are diving

• *I'm diving into the bond market.*

PAST

I dove we dove
you dove you dove
he/she/it dove they dove

• *I never dove from the highest board.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was diving we were diving
you were diving you were diving
he/she/it was diving they were diving

• *We were diving for lobsters.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dived

PAST PERFECT ... had dived

FUTURE ... will dive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be diving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dived

PAST PASSIVE

Dive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

dive *plunge into water headfirst*

She dove into the pool.
I dove from the 10-meter board.
I dove with my eyes closed.
Michael has been diving since he was four years old.

dive *go/swim underwater*

The submarine dove to 75 meters.
The ducks were diving in the pond.
The whale dove as soon as the boat approached.
We were diving in wet suits.

dive *fall sharply and quickly*

The plane dove under the clouds.
The temperature dives at nightfall.
The market dove on the news.

dive _____ *plunge quickly, lunge*
for OBJECT

The soldiers dove **for cover**.
The shortstop dove **for the ball**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dive in *start doing something energetically*

We put the craft materials on the table and told the kids to dive right in.

dive into _____ *start doing energetically*

Becky dove into the new design project.
New arrivals are diving right into the discussion.

do _____ travel [a distance] / visit [a place] / spend [time]

OBJECT

Hikers can do **20 miles a day**.
His car can do **100 miles an hour**.
We will do **several museums** this afternoon.
I did **three years** in the Navy.

do _____ be right/proper [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

INFINITIVE

It won't do **to be late for the meeting**.
It will never do **to come in over budget**.

do _____ cause, have as an effect

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The wind did **a lot of damage**.
A nap will do **you some good**.

do _____ create, produce, play a role in

OBJECT

The author is doing **a biography of Abraham Lincoln**.
The artist is doing **portraits of famous people**.
The actress did **three movies** last year.

PHRASAL VERBS

do away with _____ eliminate

I did away with my landline phone at home.
The company did away with employee bonuses.

do away with _____ murder

He did away with three wives before he was caught.

do SEP in make very tired

Driving for three hours does me in.

do SEP in cause the death/failure of, kill

Pneumonia finally did him in.

do [someone] out of _____ prevent [someone] from getting

The mob tried to do in the entire police force.
The politician was done in by greed.

The con artist did investors out of their life's savings.

do SEP over repeat

I misspelled a word and had to do the sign over.

do SEP over decorate differently

The couple did over the living room last summer.

do SEP up wrap [a package]

Would you do up this gift for me?

do SEP up fasten [clothing]

She did up her son's coat.

do SEP up decorate, dress up

We will do up the office for the boss's birthday.
Anya really did herself up for the party.

do without _____ get along without

We can't do without your help.

EXPRESSIONS

could do with _____ want, need

I could do with some ice cream right now.

do a job/number on _____ damage, harm

The kids really did a job on our furniture.
The committee did a number on his budget proposal.

do _____ dirty treat poorly

The team did him dirty by trading him to the Lions.

do _____ for a living earn money on which to live by doing

"What does she do for a living?" "She does web design."

do the trick be exactly what is needed

Lowering interest rates does the trick every time.
This pocketknife will do the trick.

top
30
verb

do well to _____
be lucky in doing

Nancy does well to give a speech without crying.
Gordon did well to escape the fire uninjured.

have to do with _____
concern, be about

What does my zip code have to do with my car insurance?

The problem has something to do with the cable service.

PRESENT

I do we do
 you do you do
 he/she/it does they do
 • *He always does his best.*

PAST

I did we did
 you did you did
 he/she/it did they did
 • *I did everything you asked.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has done

PAST PERFECT ... had done

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am doing we are doing
 you are doing you are doing
 he/she/it is doing they are doing
 • *I'm doing what I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was doing we were doing
 you were doing you were doing
 he/she/it was doing they were doing
 • *We were doing just fine until we had an accident.*

FUTURE ... will do

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be doing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have done

PAST PASSIVE

I was done we were done
 you were done you were done
 he/she/it was done they were done
 • *The job was done in record time.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Do* is also used with the base form of a verb

- to ask questions in the simple present and past tenses

Do you want some candy?

- to form negative statements with *not* in the simple present and past tenses

I do not think we will win.

- to emphasize what one is saying

I do wish Mary would attend.

do *manage, get along*

do *be adequate/right*

“How is your son doing in school?” “He’s doing well, thanks.”

A couple of hours will do.

Ten dollars will do.

Your blue suit will do for the party.

do _____ *perform, finish working on*

OBJECT

I did **some errands** after lunch.

I was just doing **my job**.

We always do **the crossword puzzle** together.

The kids should do **their homework** soon.

I did **what needed to be done**.

We will do **whatever job we are assigned**.

WH-CLAUSE

do _____ *perform [for someone’s benefit]*

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Do **me a favor**.

He did **them a good deed**.

They did **the company a real service**.

Do **a favor for me**.

He did **a good deed for them**.

They did **a real service for the company**.

for PARAPHRASE

do _____ *prepare, clean, decorate, arrange*

OBJECT

We did **the table** before the guests came.

I did **a nice roast** for dinner.

I did **the dishes** afterwards.

My husband does **the laundry**.

We did **the living room** in pale blue.

She does **my hair**.



PRESENT

I draw we draw
 you draw you draw
 he/she/it draws they draw

• *He draws a grim picture of the economy.*

PAST

I drew we drew
 you drew you drew
 he/she/it drew they drew

• *Her presentation drew a large audience.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has drawn

PAST PERFECT ... had drawn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drawing we are drawing
 you are drawing you are drawing
 he/she/it is drawing they are drawing

• *The play is drawing well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drawing we were drawing
 you were drawing you were drawing
 he/she/it was drawing they were drawing

• *We were drawing up a new will.*

FUTURE

... will draw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be drawing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have drawn

PAST PASSIVE

I was drawn we were drawn
 you were drawn you were drawn
 he/she/it was drawn they were drawn

• *The sketches were drawn by Leonardo da Vinci.*

COMPLEMENTS

draw create a picture

She draws beautifully.

Art students must draw every day.

draw attract an audience

Costume dramas rarely draw well.

draw show a handgun

Policemen are trained to draw and aim, but hold their fire.

draw _____ create [a picture]

OBJECT

The children drew **pictures of their families.**

The architects have drawn **a floor plan.**

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The children drew **them pictures.**

The economist drew **us a scary picture of the future.**

for PARAPHRASE

The children drew **pictures for them.**

The economists **drew a scary picture of the future for us.**

draw _____ create a picture of

OBJECT

The artist drew **the Taj Mahal.**

I'd like to draw **Queen Victoria without her crown.**

draw _____ drag, pull, extract

OBJECT

The teacher drew **the children** away from the window.

I drew **the curtains** across the windows.

The archers drew **their bows.**

The nurse needs to draw **a blood sample.**

He drew **the winning number.**

draw _____ move steadily

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The robber drew **closer to his victim.**

My business day was drawing to **a close.**

draw _____ attract

OBJECT

Water always draws **mosquitoes.**

He usually draws **a big crowd.**

draw _____ form

OBJECT

Voters must draw **their own conclusions** from the debate.

PHRASAL VERBS

draw SEP **up** write, formulate

A young attorney drew up my will.

Our family drew up an evacuation plan.

PRESENT

I dream we dream
 you dream you dream
 he/she/it dreams they dream
 • *He dreams of getting rich.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am dreaming we are dreaming
 you are dreaming you are dreaming
 he/she/it is dreaming they are dreaming
 • *If I'm dreaming, don't wake me up.*

PAST

I dreamt we dreamt
 you dreamt you dreamt
 he/she/it dreamt they dreamt
 • *I dreamt that I ate a giant marshmallow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was dreaming we were dreaming
 you were dreaming you were dreaming
 he/she/it was dreaming they were dreaming
 • *I was dreaming that I was late to work.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has dreamt

PAST PERFECT ... had dreamt

FUTURE ... will dream

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be dreaming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have dreamt

PAST PASSIVE

I was dreamt we were dreamt
 you were dreamt you were dreamt
 he/she/it was dreamt they were dreamt
 • *It was never even dreamt of 50 years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

dream *have thoughts and images while one sleeps*

I think I was dreaming.
 We can all dream, can't we?
 I must have been dreaming.

dream *pass time idly*

Sorry, I was just dreaming.

dream _____ *have [thoughts and images] while one sleeps*
 about OBJECT

Last night I dreamt **about my grandmother**.
 Do rabbits dream **about carrots**?
 She dreamt **about Cassie and Pookie**.
 I never dream **about my childhood**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I dreamt **that I had gotten lost in the woods**.
 Cinderella dreamt **that she had met her prince**.

about PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I dreamt **about losing my job**.
 He dreamt **about their moving back home**.

dream _____ *imagine, wish*
 of OBJECT

We all dream **of a better future for our children**.
 Everyone dreams **of world peace**.
 Everyone dreams **that they will be rich and famous**.
 People always dream **that tomorrow will be better than today**.
 Cubs fans could only dream **of winning the World Series**.
 Actors always dream **of getting the big break**.

THAT-CLAUSE

of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

dream _____ *consider possible/proper* [ALWAYS NEGATIVE]
 of PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We wouldn't dream **of going to the party without you**.
 He would never dream **of eating meat**.

PHRASAL VERBS

dream SEP **away** *spend [time] idly*

Let's sit on the riverbank and dream away the day.

dream SEP **up** *invent, concoct*

Our board dreamt up a plan to avoid bankruptcy.
 My brother and I dream up all kinds of wacky ideas.

PRESENT

I drink we drink
 you drink you drink
 he/she/it drinks they drink
 • *John drinks white wine.*

PAST

I drank we drank
 you drank you drank
 he/she/it drank they drank
 • *I drank two cups of coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has drunk

PAST PERFECT ... had drunk

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was drunk they were drunk
 • *Orange juice was always drunk at breakfast.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am drinking we are drinking
 you are drinking you are drinking
 he/she/it is drinking they are drinking
 • *I'm only drinking green tea these days.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was drinking we were drinking
 you were drinking you were drinking
 he/she/it was drinking they were drinking
 • *They were drinking in the hotel bar.*

FUTURE

... will drink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be drinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have drunk

COMPLEMENTS

drink take a liquid in one's mouth and swallow it

drink consume alcoholic beverages

drink _____ consume [a liquid]

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

drink _____ cause [oneself] to be in a particular state as a result of excessive alcohol consumption

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + into OBJECT

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + TO OBJECT

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Is the patient able to drink?
 He is drinking without any trouble now.
 Don't try to drink too soon.

Jack is drinking again.
 They never drink.
 We drink only on special occasions.

I like to drink **sparkling water**.
 He only drinks **imported beer**.
 Their kids never drink **soda pop**.
 We will drink **what is already open**.
 I'll drink **whatever is on tap**.

He drank **himself into oblivion**.
 The college students drank **themselves into a stupor**.
 One of my neighbors drank **himself to death**.
 He drank **himself stupid**.
 They drank **themselves blind**.
 I drank **myself senseless**.

PHRASAL VERBS

drink SEP **away** consume alcohol to relieve oneself of

drink SEP **down** swallow [a liquid] completely

drink SEP **in** absorb with the mind/senses

drink to _____ make a toast to

Drink up! Start/keep drinking!

drink SEP **up** consume all of [a liquid]

The lonely widower drank his troubles away.

Mother told me to drink the syrup down in one gulp.
 He drinks in knowledge like a sponge.
 The tourists drank in the mountain scenery.
 We drank in the sights and sounds of New Year's Eve.

Let's drink to the couple's health and happiness.
 I'll drink to that!

There's more wine in the cellar. Drink up!
 My teenage sons drank up all the milk.

PRESENT

I drive we drive
 you drive you drive
 he/she/it drives they drive
 • *He drives a blue Toyota.*

PAST

I drove we drove
 you drove you drove
 he/she/it drove they drove
 • *I drove the kids to school.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has driven

PAST PERFECT ... had driven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am driving we are driving
 you are driving you are driving
 he/she/it is driving they are driving
 • *I'm driving home this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was driving we were driving
 you were driving you were driving
 he/she/it was driving they were driving
 • *We were driving to Seattle.*

FUTURE ... will drive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be driving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have driven

PAST PASSIVE

I was driven we were driven
 you were driven you were driven
 he/she/it was driven they were driven
 • *The decision was driven by the need to be more cost-effective.*

COMPLEMENTS

drive operate a vehicle

Who can drive?
 My grandmother never drives at night.

drive move with great force/speed

The rain was driving across the road.
 The army drove forward relentlessly.

drive _____ operate [a vehicle (equipped with)]

OBJECT

He is driving an **old pickup truck**.
 We drove a **rented convertible** in Hawaii.
 Who can drive a **stick shift**?

drive _____ cause to go [to a specific place]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I drove **the car into the garage**.
 Can you drive **me home**?
 The waves drove **the boat onto the rocks**.
 The farmers were driving **their sheep to pasture**.

drive _____ press forcefully

OBJECT

The company drives **its sales force** hard.
 The jockeys drove **their horses** as hard as they could.

drive _____ force into a specific condition/behavior

OBJECT + to OBJECT

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Reading Dr. King's speeches drove **him to a life of service**.
 You are driving **me crazy**.
 His behavior drove **his parents mad**.
 The bad reviews drove **the author to entirely revise the play**.
 Famine drove **the peasants to revolt**.

drive _____ shape, propel

OBJECT

National interest always drives **foreign policy**.
 Opposition to slavery drove **public opinion in the North**.
 Oil prices now drive **the value of the dollar**.

PHRASAL VERBS

drive SEP **down** cause to decrease

Foreclosures are driving down home prices.

drive SEP **up** cause to increase

Limiting oil production will drive prices up.

drive _____ **on** cause to move forward to success

It is the memory of my mother that drives me on.

PRESENT

I eat we eat
 you eat you eat
 he/she/it eats they eat
 • *He only eats cereal for breakfast.*

PAST

I ate we ate
 you ate you ate
 he/she/it ate they ate
 • *I ate breakfast early this morning.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has eaten

PAST PERFECT ... had eaten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am eating we are eating
 you are eating you are eating
 he/she/it is eating they are eating
 • *We are eating out tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was eating we were eating
 you were eating you were eating
 he/she/it was eating they were eating
 • *I was eating lunch when I got the news.*

FUTURE

... will eat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be eating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have eaten

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was eaten they were eaten
 • *Only a third of the cat food was eaten.*

COMPLEMENTS

eat *take food in one's mouth and swallow it*

The children usually eat around noon.
 I eat too much when I get stressed.
 I'll call you back, we're eating now.
 Let's eat!

eat _____ consume [food]

OBJECT

The kids love to eat **pizza**.
 My wife will never eat **liver**.

WH-CLAUSE

Can we eat **what was left over from last night**?
 The dog eats **whatever the children drop on the floor**.

eat _____ bear the expense of

OBJECT

We will have to eat **the cost overrun**.
 They are just going to eat **the overhead costs**.
 You will have to eat **the rest of the contract**.

eat _____ make as if by eating

OBJECT

The paint remover ate **a hole** in my glove.

PHRASAL VERBS

eat (at) _____ bother, annoy

eat at / away at / into _____ wear away, corrode

eat in *have a meal at home*eat out *have a meal in a restaurant*Eat up! *Start/keep eating!*eat SEP up *bite all over*eat SEP up *use up, consume, waste*eat SEP up *enjoy greatly*eat SEP up *believe [something]*

His criticisms have been eating at me all day.

Rust was eating away at the exterior of my car.
 Acid was eating into the countertop.

The weather is awful. Let's eat in.

I don't feel like cooking. Let's eat out.

Dinner is getting cold. Eat up!

Mosquitoes are eating the campers up.

The boss's lavish lifestyle ate up the company's profit.

The singer told awful jokes, but the audience ate it up.

My aunt ate up everything she read in the tabloids.

EXPRESSIONS

eat _____ out of house and home
 consume all the food in [someone's] home

Our three sons are eating us out of house and home.

PRESENT

I fall we fall
 you fall you fall
 he/she/it falls they fall

• *Night falls early this time of year.*

PAST

I fell we fell
 you fell you fell
 he/she/it fell they fell

• *The market fell like a rock yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fallen

PAST PERFECT ... had fallen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am falling we are falling
 you are falling you are falling
 he/she/it is falling they are falling

• *Look out! It's falling.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was falling we were falling
 you were falling you were falling
 he/she/it was falling they were falling

• *The snow was falling heavily.*

FUTURE ... will fall

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be falling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fallen

PAST PASSIVE

Fall is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

fall drop downward

I fell on the ice.
 He fell to his knees.
 The valley fell in front of him.

fall become lower/weaker/less

The temperature has fallen into the 20s.
 His voice always falls at the end of his sentences.
 Their expectations are falling.
 The wind usually falls at sunset.
 The market fell today.
 Our productivity fell last quarter.

fall be wounded/killed in battle

Fifty thousand soldiers fell at the Battle of Gettysburg.

fall _____ pass [into a specific state/condition], become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Dad falls **asleep** in front of the news.
 Ursula fell **sick** after eating potato salad at the picnic.
 The crowd fell **silent** as she approached the podium.

PHRASAL VERBS

fall away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.
fall in a specified direction

The castle walls are falling down.
 My hat fell off when I stood up.

fall apart/through fail, come to nothing

Our party plans fell through at the last minute.

fall back retreat

The regiment fell back to the new fort.

fall back on _____ turn back to for help

The Dickersons fell back on their savings.

fall behind (on _____) lag behind

On the third lap, the American swimmers fell behind.
 The doctor fell further behind as the day went on.
 My roommates and I are falling behind on the rent.

fall for _____ become strongly attracted to

Patrick fell for Tammy on their first date.

fall for _____ be deceived by

We won't fall for the politician's lies anymore.

fall in with _____ associate with

Our son fell in with computer nerds at school.

fall off decline, diminish

Attendance at our church has fallen off dramatically.

fall on _____ happen on

Christmas falls on a Saturday this year.
 The meeting falls on my day off.

fall out (with _____) quarrel (with [someone])

Nick fell out with the project director.

fall under _____ be influenced/controlled by

The princess fell under the power of the wicked queen.

fall (up)on/to _____ become the duty of

Organization of the meeting fell to the secretary.

PRESENT

I feed we feed
 you feed you feed
 he/she/it feeds they feed
 • *He feeds the birds every day.*

PAST

I fed we fed
 you fed you fed
 he/she/it fed they fed
 • *I fed the cat two hours ago.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fed

PAST PERFECT ... had fed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeding we are feeding
 you are feeding you are feeding
 he/she/it is feeding they are feeding
 • *I'm feeding the documents into the shredder.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeding we were feeding
 you were feeding you were feeding
 he/she/it was feeding they were feeding
 • *They were feeding us misinformation.*

FUTURE ... will feed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be feeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fed

PAST PASSIVE

I was fed we were fed
 you were fed you were fed
 he/she/it was fed they were fed
 • *The children were fed earlier.*

COMPLEMENTS

feed eat

How often do they feed?
 The birds were feeding on our plum tree.
 Lions only feed when they are hungry.

feed supply [food/materials]

The zookeepers feed every morning and evening.
 Don't feed too fast, or the shredder will jam.

feed _____ give food to, supply materials to

OBJECT

We feed **the homeless** at a downtown shelter.
 You should only feed **the goldfish** once a week.
 Keep feeding **the boiler** until we have enough steam.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
TO PARAPHRASE

Feed **me some more rope**.
 Feed **some more rope to me**.

feed _____ send [an electric current, a signal]

OBJECT

The sensor feeds **a signal** to the computer.
 The station feeds **the broadcast** to a satellite.
 The current is fed to the circuit breaker.

PASSIVE

feed _____ foster, support

OBJECT

Resentment feeds **hostility**.
 Rumors are feeding **the confusion**.
 Music feeds **the soul**.
 The mind can only be fed by education.

PASSIVE

feed _____ supply

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We fed **the chickens corn**.
 The company fed **the press misleading information**.
 The director fed **the actress her lines**.
 This cable feeds **the factory its power**.
 We fed **corn to the chickens**.
 The company fed **misleading information to the press**.
 The director fed **the actress's lines to her**.
 This cable feeds **power to the factory**.

TO PARAPHRASE

feed _____ move/push [into/through an opening]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The nurse fed **the breathing tube into the patient's windpipe**.
 The tourist fed **quarters into the vending machine**.

PRESENT

I feel we feel
 you feel you feel
 he/she/it feels they feel
 • *My arm feels just fine, thanks.*

PAST

I felt we felt
 you felt you felt
 he/she/it felt they felt
 • *They felt sorry for her.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has felt

PAST PERFECT ... had felt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am feeling we are feeling
 you are feeling you are feeling
 he/she/it is feeling they are feeling
 • *I'm feeling tired.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was feeling we were feeling
 you were feeling you were feeling
 he/she/it was feeling they were feeling
 • *We were feeling our way through the cave.*

FUTURE ... will feel

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be feeling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have felt

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was felt they were felt
 • *The loss was felt by everyone.*

COMPLEMENTS

feel _____ perceive oneself to be

PREDICATE NOUN

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PAST PARTICIPLE

feel _____ have an emotion/opinion

ADVERB OF MANNER

feel _____ seem

it + feel + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE +
 INFINITIVE

feel _____ seem to the sense of touch

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

feel _____ search by touch

ADVERB OF PLACE

feel _____ seek by touching

OBJECT

feel _____ touch in order to examine

OBJECT

feel _____ be aware of, sense

OBJECT

Sally felt **a complete fool**.
 I felt **a victim of circumstances**.
 John felt **foolish**.
 We all felt **sad at the news**.
 The situation felt **all wrong**.
 Are you feeling **better** today?
 I don't feel **well**.

The team felt **defeated** after losing their best pitcher.
 We felt **overwhelmed** by the experience.

He felt **badly** about what had happened.
 Robert always feels **strongly** about political issues.

It felt **good to go to class again**.
 It feels **weird to be in the presence of so many geeks**.

The water feels **too cold**.

I felt **everywhere**.
 He felt **in his pockets** for the key.
 She felt **under the cushions**.

The burglars felt **their way** along the corridor.

I felt **his swollen ankle**.
 The detective felt **the suspect** for a gun.
 She carefully felt **the dog's injured leg**.

They felt **the impact of the explosion**.
 I felt **a rock in my shoe**.
 Ron felt **a pang of jealousy**.



feel _____ be aware of, sense [continued]

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

They felt the **boat** *getting under way*.
I felt **myself** *getting sick*.
The speaker felt **the audience** *losing interest*.

feel _____ believe, think

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The coach felt **the team** *to be ready for the game*.
John felt **them** *to be completely mistaken*.
I always felt **myself** *to be a good sport*.

THAT-CLAUSE

I feel **that I am right about it**.
We feel **that we should go ahead as planned**.
Sam felt **that he deserved a bigger raise**.

feel _____ experience, have grief/pity because of

OBJECT

We felt **Grandma's death** keenly.

PHRASAL VERBS

feel (about/around) for _____

seek by touching

I felt for the light switch.
She was feeling around in the dark for her glasses.

feel for _____ sympathize with

I really feel for the team that lost.

feel SEP out find out the views of

Senator Blather felt out the voters about the tax increase.

EXPRESSIONS

feel at home feel comfortable/accepted

My friends feel at home here.

feel _____ in [one's] bones sense by intuition

I feel it in my bones that he's going to hit a home run tonight.

feel like _____ desire, want

I feel like pizza for dinner.
I feel like drinking lemonade.

feel like _____ seem to be

This feels like real wood.
It feels like January, even though it's only September.

feel like / as if / as though _____

believe/sense that

I feel like it's going to rain.
We feel as if we're never going to pay off the mortgage.

feel like a million (bucks/dollars)

feel physically and mentally strong

An early-morning walk through the woods makes me feel like a million bucks.

feel like a new person feel refreshed/renewed

After a shower and shave, the hobo felt like a new person.

feel like death warmed over feel very sick

The flu made him feel like death warmed over.

feel like [oneself] perceive oneself to be in a normal state

After having a cold for a week, I feel like myself again.

feel no pain be drunk

After drinking a six pack, Meredith is feeling no pain.

feel [one's] oats be lively

The salesman danced a jig around the office; he's feeling his oats since he landed that big contract.

feel out of place feel awkward

Gordon feels out of place at wine-and-cheese parties.

feel the pinch have too little money

My parents want to vacation in Spain, but they're feeling the pinch.

feel up to _____
perceive oneself to be capable of

Do you feel up to going shopping?

PRESENT

I fight we fight
 you fight you fight
 he/she/it fights they fight

• *He always fights for the underdog.*

PAST

I fought we fought
 you fought you fought
 he/she/it fought they fought

• *The senator fought against corruption.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fought

PAST PERFECT ... had fought

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fighting we are fighting
 you are fighting you are fighting
 he/she/it is fighting they are fighting

• *I'm fighting a nasty cold.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fighting we were fighting
 you were fighting you were fighting
 he/she/it was fighting they were fighting

• *They were fighting a rearguard action in the hills.*

FUTURE ... will fight

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fighting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fought

PAST PASSIVE

I was fought we were fought
 you were fought you were fought
 he/she/it was fought they were fought

• *The battle of Gettysburg was fought in July 1863.*

COMPLEMENTS

fight *engage in combat/argument*

It is useless to fight with City Hall.
 The damaged ship will never fight again.
 It is noble to fight for one's country.
 The media was fighting for access to the court transcripts.
 What married couple doesn't fight occasionally?
 She was fighting against other committee members.

fight _____ *contend/struggle against, oppose*

OBJECT

The Spanish fought **Napoleon's armies** savagely.
 I am fighting **a terrible sore throat**.
 The company is fighting **the judge's ruling**.
 We will fight **the takeover bid**.
 The neighborhood fought **the new development**.
 The opposition is fighting **Senator Blather's amendment**.
 We have fought **what we considered to be wrong**.
 They will fight **whomever we nominate**.
 We will fight **whatever forces are arrayed against us**.

WH-CLAUSE

fight _____ *wage, be engaged in*

OBJECT

We are fighting **a war on poverty**.
 He is fighting **the good fight**.
 They fought **a running battle** for a week.

PHRASAL VERBS

fight back *retaliate*

She may lose the argument,
 but she'll find a way to fight back.

fight SEP **back** *resist, struggle against*

Ruth fought back her tears after hearing about his death.

fight SEP **off** *repel an attack by*

I'm trying to fight off a bout of the flu.
 The platoon fought off a much larger force.

fight on *continue to fight*

Although surrounded, Colonel Travis's men fought on.

fight SEP **out** *settle by struggle*

The rival gangs fought it out with guns.
 Beth and Seth fought out their differences in court.

fight over _____ *struggle to obtain*

The classmates fought over who would get the award.
 Jayne and Eve fought over Humphrey.

find _____ *declare as a legal verdict*

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

find _____ *obtain*

OBJECT

The jury found **the defendant guilty**.

You must find **time to study**.

Charlotte and Kathy found **an apartment** on Walnut Street.

Our product found **lots of buyers** among senior citizens.

Grandma finds **comfort** in her photo albums.

PHRASAL VERBS

find for _____ *decide in favor of*

find out *learn the truth*

find SEP **out** *learn*

The jury found for the defendant.

Your mother will find out.

I'll search the Internet and find out for you.

I found out what makes Jason tick.

What did you find out about the boss's husband?

EXPRESSIONS

find a way around _____ *discover a way to avoid [something]*

find fault (with _____) *discover something wrong with [someone/something]*

find favor with _____ *win the approval of*

find it in [one's] heart / in [oneself] _____ *have the courage/compassion*

find neither hide nor hair of _____ *fail to detect any sign of*

find [one's] bearings *determine where one is*

find [one's] tongue/voice *determine what to say*

find [one's] way *discover the route*

find [oneself] *become aware of what one wants to be/do in life*

find out the hard way *discover something by (usually unpleasant) experience*

find the/[one's] mark *discover a way to win / defeat someone*

The computer engineer found a way around the error message.

My attorney found a way around the regulation.

My landlord finds fault with everyone.

The moderator found fault with both candidates' arguments.

Vergil found favor with the emperor Augustus.

We found it in our hearts to forgive them.

The voters found it in themselves to elect a black president.

The detectives found neither hide nor hair of the suspect.

After wandering in the woods for four hours, we found our bearings.

The candidate finally found her voice, but it was too late.

We eventually found our way to the log cabin.

Melanie found herself in her sophomore year of college.

Senator Blather found out the hard way how much voters oppose tax hikes.

She found her mark midway through the second period and scored four goals after that.

PRESENT

I find we find
 you find you find
 he/she/it finds they find
 • *He finds his new job interesting.*

PAST

I found we found
 you found you found
 he/she/it found they found
 • *We found a really great babysitter.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has found

PAST PERFECT ... had found

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am finding we are finding
 you are finding you are finding
 he/she/it is finding they are finding
 • *I'm finding it hard to concentrate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was finding we were finding
 you were finding you were finding
 he/she/it was finding they were finding
 • *They were finding more support than expected.*

FUTURE ... will find

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be finding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have found

PAST PASSIVE

I was found we were found
 you were found you were found
 he/she/it was found they were found
 • *The murderer was never found.*

COMPLEMENTS

find _____ discover, come upon by chance

OBJECT

I finally found **my missing wallet**.
 The hikers found **a path back to camp**.
 Astronomers found **a new moon orbiting Jupiter**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I found **Jane a great birthday present**.
 We found **the kittens a nice home**.

for PARAPHRASE

I found **a great birthday present for Jane**.
 We found **a nice home for the kittens**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I found **the new job to have its limitations**.
 Larry found **the restaurant to get a lot of repeat customers**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I found **myself holding my breath**.
 They found **the kids playing in the backyard**.
 Harriet found **Jim working in the garage**.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

I found **the dog covered with mud**.
 We found **our car damaged beyond repair**.
 I found **myself drained by the experience**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I found **that there was no simple solution**.
 We all find **that we get tired more easily as we get older**.
 Amy found **that she liked living in Montana**.
 I find **that the new job has its limitations**.

WH-CLAUSE

We found **what we had been looking for**.
 I never found **why the computer failed**.
 The police will find **whoever did this**.

find _____ consider

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

I found **him (to be) a poor listener**.
 The teacher found **the class (to be) good students**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

They found **the car (to be) a piece of junk**.
 I found **myself (to be) upset with him**.
 We found **him (to be) amused at it**.
 They found **the situation (to be) very satisfactory**.



PRESENT

I fit we fit
you fit you fit
he/she/it fits they fit

• *The theory fits all the facts.*

PAST

I fit we fit
you fit you fit
he/she/it fit they fit

• *We fit eight people at the table before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fit

PAST PERFECT ... had fit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fitting we are fitting
you are fitting you are fitting
he/she/it is fitting they are fitting

• *I am fitting them in as best I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fitting we were fitting
you were fitting you were fitting
he/she/it was fitting they were fitting

• *We were fitting in very nicely, I thought.*

FUTURE ... will fit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fit

PAST PASSIVE

I was fit we were fit
you were fit you were fit
he/she/it was fit they were fit

• *Millions of transistors were fit onto a single chip.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: For the following six meanings, *fit* is not used in the progressive tenses.

fit *be the right size and shape*

The sweater fits perfectly.
Will the new rug fit in the living room?

fit *be accommodated*

How many students can fit in a phone booth?
These bags won't fit in the dumpster.

fit _____ *be the right size and shape for*

OBJECT

The new suit fits **me** perfectly.
The old frame won't fit **the new picture**.

fit _____ *be appropriate/suitable for*

OBJECT

Your hat fits **the rest of your outfit**.
The class fits **my schedule** pretty well.
The punishment must fit **the crime**.

fit _____ *accommodate*

OBJECT

Can we fit **24 children** in the classroom?

fit _____ *manage to insert*

OBJECT

We can fit **four skeins of yarn** in this box.

NOTE: For the following four meanings, *fit* may be used in the progressive tenses.

fit _____ *adjust to the right size and shape*

OBJECT

You need to fit **the rug** to the room.

fit _____ *measure for the right size*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

The tailor is fitting **Dad** for a new suit.
Dad was fitted for a new suit.

fit _____ *make appropriate/suitable*

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Does a songwriter fit **words to music** or **music to words**?

fit _____ *supply, equip*

OBJECT + with OBJECT

The shipyard will fit **the boat with everything it needs**.

PHRASAL VERBS

fit in *be in accord/harmony*

Our new neighbors fit in just fine.

fit SEP **in** *provide a place for*

The hostess will fit the two unexpected guests in.

PRESENT

I flee we flee
 you flee you flee
 he/she/it flees they flee

• *Everyone flees from imminent danger.*

PAST

I fled we fled
 you fled you fled
 he/she/it fled they fled

• *I never fled from a fight.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has fled

PAST PERFECT ... had fled

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am fleeing we are fleeing
 you are fleeing you are fleeing
 he/she/it is fleeing they are fleeing

• *They are fleeing as fast as they can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was fleeing we were fleeing
 you were fleeing you were fleeing
 he/she/it was fleeing they were fleeing

• *The animals were fleeing from the forest fire.*

FUTURE ... will flee

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be fleeing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have fled

PAST PASSIVE

Flee is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

flee *move/run away from danger/
 unpleasantness, escape*

The fish fled when my shadow fell
 across the pond.
 The deer fled when they heard the shot.
 The birds fled before the coming storm.
 The refugees fled into the woods.
 The soldiers were fleeing back into the trenches.
 The reporters had fled to the press bar.
 Civilians were fleeing from the rampaging soldiers.

flee *move away swiftly, vanish*

The moon fled behind the clouds.
 The ghostly shape fled from view.
 Our shadows fled before us.

flee _____ *run away from*
 (from) OBJECT

The survivors quickly fled **(from) the scene of the explosion.**
 The reporters fled **(from) the room** when the senator began
 his lengthy speech.
 The entire city fled **(from) the rapidly rising floodwaters.**
 The animals fled **(from) the burning barn.**
 I fled **(from) the noisy, overcrowded arena.**

PRESENT

I fling we fling
 you fling you fling
 he/she/it flings they fling
 • *She flings her hair back if she's angry.*

PAST

I flung we flung
 you flung you flung
 he/she/it flung they flung
 • *He flung his clothes all over room.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has flung

PAST PERFECT ... had flung

PAST PASSIVE

I was flung we were flung
 you were flung you were flung
 he/she/it was flung they were flung
 • *The protesters were flung into police vans.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flinging we are flinging
 you are flinging you are flinging
 he/she/it is flinging they are flinging
 • *The dog is flinging dirt everywhere.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flinging we were flinging
 you were flinging you were flinging
 he/she/it was flinging they were flinging
 • *The kids were flinging toys out the car window.*

FUTURE

... will fling

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be flinging

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have flung

COMPLEMENTS

fling _____ move suddenly, scatter

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Roberta flung **out of the room**.
 The leaves were flinging **all over the lawn**.

fling _____ throw recklessly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids had flung **their books everywhere**.
 I flung **myself onto the sofa**.
 The rioters had flung **the furniture in every direction**.
 The wind was flinging **my raked leaves all over the lawn**.

fling _____ cast, throw

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He flung **a rope over a tree limb**.
 The cadets will fling **their caps into the air**.
 I flung **a blanket over the shivering children**.
 The fisherman is flinging **his net into the pond**.
 The guards flung **him into an empty cell**.
 The reporter flung **his shoe at the president**.

fling _____ devote oneself entirely to

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + into OBJECT

I flung **myself into jazz**.
 We flung **ourselves into the social scene**.
 Freshmen tend to fling **themselves into too many activities**.
 Frank flung **himself into his work**.

PHRASAL VERBS

fling SEP **around/aside/away/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** throw in a specified direction

The burglar flung away his loot as soon as he saw the cop.
 Bill opened the car door and flung his jacket in.

EXPRESSIONS

fling **caution to the wind** take a serious risk

Harry flung caution to the wind and jumped into the lake with all his clothes on.

fling **[one's] head back** tilt one's head back suddenly

Don flung his head back and laughed.

PRESENT

I fly we fly
 you fly you fly
 he/she/it flies they fly

• *Cathy flies to New York once a month.*

PAST

I flew we flew
 you flew you flew
 he/she/it flew they flew

• *I never flew in such a small plane before.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has flown

PAST PERFECT ... had flown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am flying we are flying
 you are flying you are flying
 he/she/it is flying they are flying

• *I am flying back tonight.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was flying we were flying
 you were flying you were flying
 he/she/it was flying they were flying

• *The kids were flying kites in the park.*

FUTURE ... will fly

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be flying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have flown

PAST PASSIVE

I was flown we were flown
 you were flown you were flown
 he/she/it was flown they were flown

• *The flags were flown at half-mast.*

COMPLEMENTS

fly *move through the air*

My hat flew into the air.
 The birds flew around us, screeching and squawking.
 The plane was flying at 36,000 feet.

fly *travel by aircraft*

Amelia Earhart was the first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic.
 When are you flying to Paris?
 Whoever thought that we could fly to the moon?

fly *wave/float in the air*

Flags were flying in the breeze.
 His shirttail was flying in the wind as he ran down the hill.

fly *move/spread/go/pass quickly*

The wood chips flew as the chain saw bit into the log.
 The door flew open, and in walked Grandmother.
 Rumors were flying everywhere.
 I'm already late for the meeting; I have to fly.
 My, how time flies.

fly *win acceptance*

His proposal will never fly with the voters.
 "Do you think the plan will fly?" "I think it will fly."

fly _____ pilot / travel in [an aircraft]

OBJECT

My grandfather flew **fighter planes** in World War II.
 I flew **United** to Chicago.

fly _____ transport by aircraft

OBJECT

We flew **the children** to England, where they would be safe.
 They flew **the engine** back to the manufacturer.
 The replacement parts were flown from Sweden.

PASSIVE

fly _____ cause to move through the air

OBJECT

Didn't you fly **paper airplanes** when you were a kid?
 We always fly **the flag** on Memorial Day.

PHRASAL VERBS

fly *away/back/down/in/out/over/up/etc. fly in a specified direction*

The robin flew down from its nest.
 The planes flew over in formation.

fly *by go quickly past*

Did you see the wild geese fly by, heading home again?
 January really flew by.

PRESENT

I forbear	we forbear
you forbear	you forbear
he/she/it forbears	they forbear

• *He forbears from talking about his wealth.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forbearing	we are forbearing
you are forbearing	you are forbearing
he/she/it is forbearing	they are forbearing

• *We are forbearing from taking any action.*

PAST

I forbore	we forbore
you forbore	you forbore
he/she/it forbore	they forbore

• *I forbore my usual coffee after dinner.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forbearing	we were forbearing
you were forbearing	you were forbearing
he/she/it was forbearing	they were forbearing

• *The critics were forbearing in their comments.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forborne

PAST PERFECT ... had forborne

FUTURE ... will forbear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forbearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forborne

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was forborne	they were forborne

• *A scathing reply was forborne with difficulty.*

COMPLEMENTS

forbear *be patient/tolerant*

We know there have been some problems,
but please forbear.
To forbear in the face of provocation is admirable.
Where someone else might seek revenge, he forbears.

forbear _____ *refrain (from), resist*

OBJECT

I will forbear **my uncle's company** when he is in town.
She forbears **mention of his name** around her ex-boyfriend.
An exercise of presidential power couldn't be forborne
any longer.

PASSIVE

(from) PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We are forbearing **(from) saying anything about the accident.**
I will forbear **(from) replying to your rude comments.**
Only a saint would forbear **(from) getting angry.**

PRESENT

I forbid we forbid
 you forbid you forbid
 he/she/it forbids they forbid
 • *The law forbids the sale of handguns.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forbidding we are forbidding
 you are forbidding you are forbidding
 he/she/it is forbidding they are forbidding
 • *Sally's mother is forbidding any more parties.*

PAST

I forbade we forbade
 you forbade you forbade
 he/she/it forbade they forbade
 • *The police forbade parking on the street.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forbidding we were forbidding
 you were forbidding you were forbidding
 he/she/it was forbidding they were forbidding
 • *The company was forbidding smoking in the area.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forbidden

PAST PERFECT ... had forbidden

FUTURE ... will forbid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forbidding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forbidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was forbidden we were forbidden
 you were forbidden you were forbidden
 he/she/it was forbidden they were forbidden
 • *The lawyers were forbidden to talk to the press.*

COMPLEMENTS

forbid _____ prohibit, not allow

OBJECT

The law forbids **the sale of alcohol to minors**.
 Most religions forbid **marriage between close relatives**.
 My parents forbid **books at the dinner table**.
 Lack of time forbids **further explanation**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

Campfires are forbidden in this area.
 I forbid **you to talk to me like that**.
 Some churches forbid **priests to marry**.
 Jane's mother forbade **her to go to the party**.

PASSIVE

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I was forbidden **to take pictures there**.
 The new law forbids **smoking in public places**.
 The rules of soccer forbid **tripping an opponent**.
 My mother forbids **watching TV before finishing homework**.
 Space forbids **covering all the issues**.

PASSIVE

Using a cell phone in class is strictly forbidden.

EXPRESSIONS

God/Heaven forbid! *I hope it will not happen.*

God forbid that Mark should fall asleep and have an accident.
 "Your ex-boyfriend is coming to the party."
 "Heaven forbid!"

PRESENT

I forecast we forecast
 you forecast you forecast
 he/she/it forecasts they forecast

• *His newsletter forecasts economic disaster.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forecasting we are forecasting
 you are forecasting you are forecasting
 he/she/it is forecasting they are forecasting

• *The weather bureau is forecasting more snow.*

PAST

I forecast we forecast
 you forecast you forecast
 he/she/it forecast they forecast

• *The weatherman forecast rain for today.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forecasting we were forecasting
 you were forecasting you were forecasting
 he/she/it was forecasting they were forecasting

• *Economists were forecasting a strong market.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forecast

PAST PERFECT ... had forecast

FUTURE

... will forecast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forecasting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forecast

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was forecast they were forecast

• *Earnings were forecast to rise.*

COMPLEMENTS

forecast *make a prediction*

Who can forecast in such a turbulent economy?
 He is reluctant to forecast until more data is available.

forecast _____ *predict*

OBJECT

The weather service is forecasting **heavy rain** for tonight.
 Most economists have forecast **a good fourth quarter**.

PASSIVE

The sudden breakup of their marriage had not been forecast
 by anybody.

THAT-CLAUSE

Computer models have forecast **that the earth will get warmer**.
 I forecast **that it will take months to sell the house**.

PASSIVE

That the dollar would weaken has long been forecast.

WH-CLAUSE

No one can truly forecast **what will happen next**.
 They are trying to forecast **how much rain we will get**.

forecast _____ *foreshadow*

OBJECT

High voter turnout forecasts **trouble for the incumbents**.
 Scary music in a movie always forecasts **danger**.

PASSIVE

Some people think that earthquakes can be forecast by the
 behavior of animals.

PRESENT

I forget we forget
 you forget you forget
 he/she/it forgets they forget
 • *He always forgets to put the milk away.*

PAST

I forgot we forgot
 you forgot you forgot
 he/she/it forgot they forgot
 • *I forgot his first name.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forgotten

PAST PERFECT ... had forgotten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgetting we are forgetting
 you are forgetting you are forgetting
 he/she/it is forgetting they are forgetting
 • *I'm always forgetting something.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgetting we were forgetting
 you were forgetting you were forgetting
 he/she/it was forgetting they were forgetting
 • *I was forgetting what I was about to do.*

FUTURE ... will forget

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forgetting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forgotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgotten we were forgotten
 you were forgotten you were forgotten
 he/she/it was forgotten they were forgotten
 • *The incident certainly wasn't forgotten.*

COMPLEMENTS

forget *fail to remember*

Don't forget!
 He never forgets.
 They won't forget, will they?

forget _____ *fail to remember*

OBJECT

I forgot **his e-mail address**.
 You must never forget **your password**.
 Don't forget **the flowers**.

INFINITIVE

I forgot **to water the plants**.
 Don't forget **to run the dishwasher**.
 The kids always forget **to hang their coats up**.

THAT-CLAUSE

We forgot **that we were having dinner with the Smiths tonight**.
 I forgot **that the meeting had been canceled**.
 She forgot **that she had to pick up the cat at the vet**.

WH-CLAUSE

I forgot **what I was about to say**.
 He forgot **where he had put his car keys**.
 I will never forget **where we stayed in Florida**.

WH-INFINITIVE

The author forgot **where to put the quote marks**.
 I forgot **how to change my password**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I can't forget **taking her to the hospital**.
 He won't soon forget **doing that**.
 Did he forget **running into a tree**?

forget _____ *leave behind*

OBJECT

Darn it. I forgot **my briefcase**.
 Don't forget **your hat** when you leave.
 People always forget **things** when they get off the plane.

forget _____ *neglect, disregard*

(*about*) OBJECT

Don't forget (**about**) **your friends** when you send holiday cards.
 Sam forgot (**about**) **the ice cream in the trunk**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forget it! *Disregard it.*

"Do I have to clean the bathroom?"
 "Forget it! I'll do it myself."

PRESENT

I forgive we forgive
 you forgive you forgive
 he/she/it forgives they forgive
 • *He forgives anything his daughter does.*

PAST

I forgave we forgave
 you forgave you forgave
 he/she/it forgave they forgave
 • *I forgave him for forgetting my birthday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forgiven

PAST PERFECT ... had forgiven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgiving we are forgiving
 you are forgiving you are forgiving
 he/she/it is forgiving they are forgiving
 • *I'm forgiving part of their debt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgiving we were forgiving
 you were forgiving you were forgiving
 he/she/it was forgiving they were forgiving
 • *They were always forgiving my mistakes.*

FUTURE ... will forgive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forgiving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forgiven

PAST PASSIVE

I was forgiven we were forgiven
 you were forgiven you were forgiven
 he/she/it was forgiven they were forgiven
 • *You were forgiven for making such a mistake.*

COMPLEMENTS

forgive *pardon*

He forgives readily.
 She can forgive without being superior about it.
 I can't forgive so easily.

forgive _____ *excuse, pardon, stop feeling angry/punitive about/toward*

OBJECT

I tried to forgive **his insensitive behavior**.Some people never forgive **even the smallest slight**.

PASSIVE

My sister was always forgiven, no matter what she had done.

OBJECT + *for* OBJECTI forgave **Don for his thoughtless remark**.Please forgive **me for this interruption**.OBJECT + *for* PRESENT PARTICIPLEWill she forgive **him for forgetting their anniversary?**Can you forgive **me for being so late?**I'll never forgive **her for eating the last piece of cake**.forgive _____ *cancel payment of [a debt]*

OBJECT

Many parents forgive **their children's loans**.The bank may temporarily forgive **interest payments on house loans**.Some schools will forgive **a percentage of student loans**.

EXPRESSIONS

Forgive and forget. [PROVERB]

Pardon an offense, and forget it ever happened.

You could punish him forever—
 or just forgive and forget.

PRESENT

I forgo we forgo
 you forgo you forgo
 he/she/it forgoes they forgo
 • *He forgoes dessert when he is dieting.*

PAST

I forwent we forwent
 you forwent you forwent
 he/she/it forwent they forwent
 • *No college student ever forwent free food.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forgone

PAST PERFECT ... had forgone

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forgoing we are forgoing
 you are forgoing you are forgoing
 he/she/it is forgoing they are forgoing
 • *We are forgoing our usual trip to Hawaii.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forgoing we were forgoing
 you were forgoing you were forgoing
 he/she/it was forgoing they were forgoing
 • *The emcee was forgoing lengthy introductions.*

FUTURE ... will forgo

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forgoing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forgone

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was forgone they were forgone

• *The registration fee was forgone to boost attendance.*

NOTES: (1) *Forgo* may also be spelled *forego*: *forego* | *foregoes* · *forewent* · *have foregone*.

(2) An archaic verb **forego** (always spelled with *e* and meaning “to go before”) survives only as a present participle / adjective (as in *The foregoing statement was a paid political announcement*) and as a past participle (in the phrase *foregone conclusion*).

COMPLEMENTS

forgo _____ *decline the use/enjoyment of, do without*

OBJECT

We must forgo **the reception** tonight.
 The doctor told him that he must forgo **all fatty foods**.
 I forwent **the nasty response that popped into my mind**.
 The accused has forgone **his right to a jury trial**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We must forgo **meeting you for dinner**.
 I couldn't forgo **seeing how the movie turned out**.
 We are trying to get the kids to forgo **watching so much TV**.

PRESENT

I forsake	we forsake
you forsake	you forsake
he/she/it forsakes	they forsake

• *The movie forsakes any semblance of plot.*

PAST

I forsook	we forsook
you forsook	you forsook
he/she/it forsook	they forsook

• *They forsook allegiance to their country.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has forsaken

PAST PERFECT ... had forsaken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am forsaking	we are forsaking
you are forsaking	you are forsaking
he/she/it is forsaking	they are forsaking

• *You are forsaking some of your oldest friends.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was forsaking	we were forsaking
you were forsaking	you were forsaking
he/she/it was forsaking	they were forsaking

• *The professors were forsaking their teaching duties.*

FUTURE ... will forsake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be forsaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have forsaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was forsaken	we were forsaken
you were forsaken	you were forsaken
he/she/it was forsaken	they were forsaken

• *This principle was forsaken in their greed for power.*

COMPLEMENTS

forsake _____ abandon, desert

OBJECT

The bridegroom forsook **all of his old habits**.He would never forsake **Susan**.“And forsaking **all others**, I will be faithful...” [WEDDING VOW]

All of his promises were forsaken.

PASSIVE

forsake _____ renounce, give up

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He forsook **smoking and drinking**.I will forsake **eating meat** for a month.John will never forsake **riding his motorcycle**.Because of my knee injury I have forsaken **playing tennis**.

PRESENT

I freeze we freeze
 you freeze you freeze
 he/she/it freezes they freeze
 • *It usually freezes by mid-October.*

PAST

I froze we froze
 you froze you froze
 he/she/it froze they froze
 • *The bank froze their assets.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has frozen

PAST PERFECT ... had frozen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am freezing we are freezing
 you are freezing you are freezing
 he/she/it is freezing they are freezing
 • *I'm freezing out here.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was freezing we were freezing
 you were freezing you were freezing
 he/she/it was freezing they were freezing
 • *They were freezing raspberries from their garden.*

FUTURE

... will freeze

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be freezing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have frozen

PAST PASSIVE

I was frozen we were frozen
 you were frozen you were frozen
 he/she/it was frozen they were frozen
 • *The specimens were frozen at -70°C.*

COMPLEMENTS

freeze *harden into ice, become solid due to cold*

freeze *become uncomfortably/dangerously cold*

freeze *be at or below 32° Fahrenheit*

freeze *be preserved in a very cold place*

freeze *become motionless*

freeze *be damaged/destroyed by frost*

freeze _____ *cause (the contents of) to harden into ice or other solid*

OBJECT

freeze _____ *chill, make uncomfortably/dangerously cold*

OBJECT

freeze _____ *preserve in a very cold place*

OBJECT

freeze _____ *cause to become motionless*

OBJECT

freeze _____ *fix at a certain level*

OBJECT

freeze _____ *prohibit, restrict*

OBJECT

The muddy roads would soon freeze.

The rivers all froze that dreadful winter.

Put on a hat or your ears will freeze.

Turn up the heat; the room is freezing.

The mountain climbers nearly froze to death.

The weatherman says it will freeze tonight.

Girl Scout cookies freeze well.

The rabbits froze when they heard the hawk.

His face froze when he heard us coming.

My petunias all froze last night.

We froze **a couple of trays of ice**.

The cold snap froze **our garden hoses**.

The wind was freezing **my fingers**.

The driving rain froze **the crowd watching the game**.

We can freeze **the leftover vegetable soup**.

The shout froze **everyone** in the store.

The peace agreement froze **the armies** in place.

The accident froze **traffic** for hours.

The Federal Reserve froze **the interest rate** today.

The government froze **foreign assets** today.

PHRASAL VERBS

freeze up *stop functioning*

If there is a power surge,

my computer completely freezes up.

I just freeze up when I have to talk to a group of people.

PRESENT

I gainsay we gainsay
 you gainsay you gainsay
 he/she/it gainsays they gainsay

• *He gainsays every proposal to raise taxes.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am gainsaying we are gainsaying
 you are gainsaying you are gainsaying
 he/she/it is gainsaying they are gainsaying

• *They are not gainsaying your idea.*

PAST

I gainsaid we gainsaid
 you gainsaid you gainsaid
 he/she/it gainsaid they gainsaid

• *They gainsaid whatever we wanted to do.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was gainsaying we were gainsaying
 you were gainsaying you were gainsaying
 he/she/it was gainsaying they were gainsaying

• *He wasn't gainsaying the importance of the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has gainsaid

PAST PERFECT ... had gainsaid

FUTURE ... will gainsay

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be gainsaying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have gainsaid

PAST PASSIVE

I was gainsaid we were gainsaid
 you were gainsaid you were gainsaid
 he/she/it was gainsaid they were gainsaid

• *The defendant's statement was gainsaid by three witnesses.*

COMPLEMENTS

gainsay _____ *contradict, deny, declare false* [OFTEN NEGATIVE]

OBJECT

I don't gainsay **the impact of the recession.**

Nobody is gainsaying **your conclusions.**

I will not gainsay **a member of the club**, even if he is wrong.

PASSIVE

The high risk is being gainsaid by informed people.

THAT-CLAUSE

I won't gainsay **that his ideas have some merit.**

Even his opponents don't gainsay **that he is trying to do the right thing.**

Can you really gainsay **that interest rates have fallen?**

WH-CLAUSE

No one will gainsay **what the president recommends.**

I am not gainsaying **how risky the venture is.**

Senator Blather will gainsay **whatever you propose.**

PRESENT

I get we get
 you get you get
 he/she/it gets they get

• *He gets to sleep late on weekends.*

PAST

I got we got
 you got you got
 he/she/it got they got

• *We got good feedback on the proposal.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has got/gotten

PAST PERFECT ... had got/gotten

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am getting we are getting
 you are getting you are getting
 he/she/it is getting they are getting

• *I'm getting ready now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was getting we were getting
 you were getting you were getting
 he/she/it was getting they were getting

• *The plan was getting a lot of criticism.*

FUTURE ... will get

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be getting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have got/gotten

PAST PASSIVE

I was got/gotten we were got/gotten
 you were got/gotten you were got/gotten
 he/she/it was got/gotten they were got/gotten

• *Permission was gotten from the authorities.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Get* is also used as a helping verb to form the passive voice.

get + PAST PARTICIPLE

The burglar got caught by police.
 I got injured playing football.
 Bobby got sent to the principal's office.
 We'll get married in October.

get _____ receive, obtain

OBJECT

They got **permission** to leave early.
 I got a **"B"** in Social Studies last quarter.
 I got a **traffic ticket** last night.
 The company got **an award for community service**.
 I'm getting a **busy signal**.
 We are getting a **new car**.
 Permission to leave early was gotten.

get _____ bring

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

Get **me a coffee**, will you?
 I will get **her a blanket**.
 Get a **coffee for me**, will you?
 I will get a **blanket for her**.

get _____ notice, understand

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

Did you get **that smirky look on his face**?
 "Did you get **the joke**?" "Yes, I got it."
 I got **what he was trying to say**.
 Did you get **how he avoided talking to us**?

get _____ become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He really got **angry** about it.
 I got **sick** on the way back.
 The dogs got **loose** and headed for the barn.

get _____ begin, start

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Let's get **going**.

get _____ have the opportunity, receive permission

INFINITIVE

We will get **to meet them at the reception**.
 The kids get **to stay up late tonight**.



get _____ cause/persuade [to do/be]

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

get _____ arrive at

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ travel

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ cause to move

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

get _____ be affected/infected by

OBJECT

NOTE: For the following two meanings, *get* is used only in the present perfect tense.

get _____ have, possess

OBJECT

get _____ must

INFINITIVE

Get **your hands** *clean* before coming to the table.

I got **the computer screen** *dirty*.

I got **the kids** *to clean up their room*.

We finally got **the truck** *to start*.

I got **the kids** *cleaning up their room*.

It got **me** *thinking about a new solution*.

I finally got **my computer** *fixed*.

We got **our house** *painted*.

Our parents got **home** early.

We can get **to the office** in 15 minutes.

Did you get **to Paris** last summer?

I got **as far as Chicago**.

Can you get **me to the airport** in 30 minutes?

I got **the car out of the garage**.

I got **the hiccups** just before I went on stage.

Can you get **the flu** from a flu shot?

I've got **a terrible cold**.

I've only got **about \$20** on me.

I've got **to go now**.

He has got **to be more careful**.

PHRASAL VERBS

get across/back/down/in/out/up/etc.

move in a specified direction

get SEP in/out/etc. take/bring in a

specified direction

get around/out become known

get around _____ avoid

get away with _____ do without

being punished

get back to _____ respond to

get behind (on _____) be late making

payments (on [something])

get by (on/with _____) manage to

survive/do (with [something])

get in/into _____ be admitted to

get out of _____ avoid,
escape

get over _____ recover
from

get up rise

get _____ up cause to rise

The police ordered the crowd to get back.

She opened the car door and told him to get in.

Did you get the firewood in?

He got the cheese and crackers out.

The news got around that they were divorced.

I got around the problem by installing new software.

The company got away with selling pirated software.

I must get back to Anthony tomorrow.

Lots of people have gotten behind on their mortgages.

Amos gets by on \$750 a month.

Our neighbors get by with just one car.

Our son got into nursing school.

Harold got out of doing dishes four nights in a row.

Pat got over the flu in three days.

It's 7 o'clock—time to get up.

Please get up and get me a fork.

Mom got us up before dawn.

PRESENT

I gird we gird
 you gird you gird
 he/she/it girds they gird
 • *She girds the coarse robe with a thick cord.*

PAST

I girt we girt
 you girt you girt
 he/she/it girt they girt
 • *He girt himself for a fight.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has girt

PAST PERFECT ... had girt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am girding we are girding
 you are girding you are girding
 he/she/it is girding they are girding
 • *The centurion is girding his cloak before leaving.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was girding we were girding
 you were girding you were girding
 he/she/it was girding they were girding
 • *The army was girding itself for battle.*

FUTURE ... will gird

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be girding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have girt

PAST PASSIVE

I was girt we were girt
 you were girt you were girt
 he/she/it was girt they were girt
 • *The Parthenon was girt by 46 pillars.*

COMPLEMENTS

gird _____ fasten with a belt/strap/cord

OBJECT

He girt **his sword** around his waist.
 We girt **all of the drapes** with blue sashes.
 The garment was girt tightly around her.

PASSIVE

gird _____ surround, encircle

OBJECT

A deep moat girds **the castle**.
 Trees have completely girt **the old barn**.
 The city is girt by two beltways.

PASSIVE

gird _____ prepare [oneself/someone] [for action / a challenge]

OBJECT + for OBJECT

The president is girding **the nation for war**.
 The company girt **the employees for another round of layoffs**.

(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) for OBJECT

The soldiers girt (**themselves**) *for the summer campaign*.
 Toy stores are girding (**themselves**) *for the Christmas rush*.

OBJECT + for WH-CLAUSE

I girt (**myself**) *for a confrontation with my boss*.
 The candidate girt **his supporters for what was in store**.

(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) for WH-CLAUSE

We all girt (**ourselves**) *for whatever was to come*.
 Jayne girt (**herself**) *for what might happen to her job*.

(REFLEXIVE PRONOUN +) INFINITIVE

He girt (**himself**) *to cross the shaky footbridge*.
 Senator Blather is girding (**himself**) *to run for president*.
 The government is girding (**itself**) *to take action against counterfeiters*.

EXPRESSIONS

gird (up) [one's] loins prepare oneself [for action / a challenge]

State universities are girding their loins for cutbacks in public funding.

give _____ perform

OBJECT

The symphony gave **a concert** last night.
The band gave **a free concert** to benefit AIDS victims.

give _____ cause to have

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Loud music gives **me a headache**.

give _____ pay

OBJECT

Michelle gave **\$125** for her outfit.

give _____ administer

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Freddie gave **the guard a punch in the mouth**.
Darla's mom gave **her some cough syrup**.
Darla's mom gave **some cough syrup to her**.

TO PARAPHRASE

give _____ cause

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

You gave **me to understand that you would support us**.
He gave **Jackson to believe that the problem was solved**.

give _____ sentence to

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The judge gave **the criminal 30 days in jail**.

give _____ sacrifice

OBJECT + for OBJECT

"It is sweet and right to give **your life for your country**."
[HORACE]

give _____ devote

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Marvin gave **his whole life to the cause of justice**.

PHRASAL VERBS

give SEP away betray

A club member gave away our
secret meeting place.

give SEP back return

You'll have to give the engagement ring back.

give in (to _____) surrender
(to [someone/something])

After arguing for two hours, our opponents gave in.
Senator Blather gave in to pressure from his colleagues.

give it to _____ scold, punish

My boss really gave it to me when I walked in late.

give off _____ release, emit

The compost is giving off an earthy smell.
The laptop gives off a lot of heat.

give out come to an end

The settlers' food gave out after three weeks.

give out wear out, stop operating

After 203,000 miles, our 1979 Oldsmobile finally gave out.

give SEP out distribute

C.J. gave out the president's itinerary.

give SEP out make known

Don't give out your cell phone number.

give out _____ produce

This old furnace gives out a lot of heat.

give SEP up stop, cease

Mom and Dad gave up smoking at the same time.

give SEP up surrender, yield

Within an hour, the gunman gave up two hostages.
An hour later, he gave himself up.

give up (on _____) admit failure
(with [something])

Sheila finally gave up on the crossword puzzle.
I tried four times to reach Lisa, then gave up.

give up (on _____) stop trying ((to do))

Ainsley finally gave up on trying to convince Sam.

PRESENT

I give we give
 you give you give
 he/she/it gives they give
 • *He gives 10% of his income to charity.*

PAST

I gave we gave
 you gave you gave
 he/she/it gave they gave
 • *The company gave me a car to use.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has given

PAST PERFECT ... had given

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am giving we are giving
 you are giving you are giving
 he/she/it is giving they are giving
 • *I'm giving up on it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was giving we were giving
 you were giving you were giving
 he/she/it was giving they were giving
 • *We were giving a party that evening.*

FUTURE ... will give

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be giving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have given

PAST PASSIVE

I was given we were given
 you were given you were given
 he/she/it was given they were given
 • *All of the employees were given entry cards.*

COMPLEMENTS

give *make a gift/donation*

How much can you give?
 They always give generously to the homeless shelter.

give *yield, collapse*

For the deadlock to be broken, something has to give.
 The floor might give if we put that much weight on it.

give _____ *make a gift of, donate*
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 TO PARAPHRASE

Terry gave **Dan a new computer**.
 Spanky gave **Alfalfa the high sign**.
 Terry gave **a new computer to Dan**.
 Spanky gave **the high sign to Alfalfa**.

give _____ *convey physically*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 TO PARAPHRASE

She gave **a little smile** at the news.
 Leo gave **the president a copy of the report**.
 She gave **the boys a dirty look**.
 Leo gave **a copy of the report to the president**.
 She gave **a dirty look to the boys**.

give _____ *provide*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 TO PARAPHRASE

Soy-based inks give **good results**.
 Give **me a chance to prove myself**.
 This gives **gays and lesbians the right to marry**.
 The boss gave **his cousin a job**.
 The boss gave **a job to his cousin**.

give _____ *host*
 OBJECT
 INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 FOR PARAPHRASE
 PASSIVE

We will give **the reception** in his honor.
 I gave **my parents a surprise party**.
 We gave **the seniors a graduation party**.
 I gave **a surprise party for my parents**.
 We gave **a graduation party for the seniors**.
 A graduation party was given for the seniors.
 The seniors were given a graduation party.

give _____ *present*
 OBJECT

The senator is giving **a speech** on TV.



go _____ engage in [a sport/leisure activity]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We plan to go **skiing** in Idaho.
They went **dancing** last night.

go _____ do [something inadvisable] [USED ONLY IN THE NEGATIVE; INFORMAL]

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Don't go **telling everyone about it**.
We won't go **running to him with all our problems**.

go _____ belong

ADVERB OF PLACE

Coats go **in the closet, not on the floor**.

go _____ be sent

to OBJECT

The proposal went by e-mail **to all department heads**.

go _____ be given/sold

to OBJECT

The prize goes **to the lady in the blue sweater**.
The antique lamp goes **to bidder No. 17**.

PHRASAL VERBS

go back/down/in/out/up/etc.
move in a specified direction

He went back to check the furnace.
Ed went out to watch the sunset.

go against _____ oppose, be contrary to

She'll go against the incumbent in the fall election.
Dispensing birth control pills goes against his conscience.

go along with _____ agree with

The president went along with his staff on the issue.

go away end

My headache went away before lunch.

go back to _____ date back to

The New Year's Eve custom goes back to Druid times.

go back to _____ resume

It's four in the morning—go back to sleep.

go by _____ be known as

His real name is Meredith, but he goes by Snuffy.

go down decrease

The swelling has slowly gone down.
The temperature went down 18 degrees in one hour.

go down stop functioning

Cable service went down at 9:36 this morning.

go for _____ be attracted by

She goes for men with beards.

go for _____ do [an activity]

Let's go for a swim.

go for _____ sell for [an amount]

How much did the dining room set go for?

go into _____ begin a career in

Steve went into electronics, and Stuart went into medicine.

go off explode, fire

The gun went off accidentally.

go off take place, happen

The surprise party went off as planned.

go on be switched on

All of a sudden, the lights went on.

go on happen

What went on at yesterday's meeting?
What's going on?

go on (____) continue ([doing])

Forrest Gump just went on running.
How long will the concert go on?

go out be extinguished

The lights went out one by one.

go through _____ examine

She went through her mail during supper.

go through _____ spend, consume

We go through \$5,000 a month.
Our son goes through two gallons of milk a week.

go under fail

A third of all small businesses go under.

go up be built

A new mall is going up on the edge of town.

go up increase

The stock market has gone up 225 points.

go with _____
harmonize with

This tie would go well with your blue suit.
That paisley shirt doesn't go with anything.

go without _____
manage without

The prisoners went without food for nine days.

PRESENT

I go	we go
you go	you go
he/she/it goes	they go

• *He goes to all their home games.*

PAST

I went	we went
you went	you went
he/she/it went	they went

• *We never went to Spain.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has gone

PAST PERFECT ... had gone

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am going	we are going
you are going	you are going
he/she/it is going	they are going

• *I'm going now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was going	we were going
you were going	you were going
he/she/it was going	they were going

• *The party was going very well.*

FUTURE ... will go

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be going

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have gone

PAST PASSIVE

Go is never used in the passive voice. In sentences like *He is gone*, *gone* is a past participle functioning as an adjective.

COMPLEMENTS

go *depart, leave*

Please go.
I'm going as soon as I can get packed.
The seasons come and go.

go *function*

The engine won't go.

go *become worse, fail*

I think my hearing is going.
For most athletes, the knees are the first thing to go.

go *be eliminated/discarded*

I'm afraid that Smith will have to go.

go *be worded/sung*

The song goes like this ... la la di la la, la la di da.

go _____ *travel*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I'm going **to Dallas** tomorrow.

We are going **to lunch** now.

Where do they go on vacation?

go _____ *proceed, move*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The car in the left lane is going **too slow**.

I'm going **as fast as I can**.

go _____ *extend, lead*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Route 66 originally went **from Chicago to Los Angeles**.

Delta goes **everywhere in the Southeast**.

That door goes **to the kitchen**.

go _____ *pass*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The evening went **too quickly**.

go _____ *progress*

ADVERB OF MANNER

The meeting is going **well**.

How is it going?

go _____ *be, become, turn out*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers went **hungry** for days.

I think the cheese has gone **bad**.

How many banks have gone **bankrupt**?

My e-mails to her have all gone **unanswered**.

go _____ *attend*

to OBJECT

Dad went **to college** on the G.I. Bill.

Sidney went **to Harvard Law School**.

Our family goes **to church** on Sunday.

Let's go **to a movie** tonight.



PRESENT

I grind we grind
 you grind you grind
 he/she/it grinds they grind
 • *Poverty grinds everyone down.*

PAST

I ground we ground
 you ground you ground
 he/she/it ground they ground
 • *We ground some more coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ground**PAST PERFECT** ... had ground**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am grinding we are grinding
 you are grinding you are grinding
 he/she/it is grinding they are grinding
 • *They are grinding their rusty swords and spears.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was grinding we were grinding
 you were grinding you were grinding
 he/she/it was grinding they were grinding
 • *I was grinding my teeth in my sleep.*

FUTURE

... will grind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be grinding**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have ground**PAST PASSIVE**

I was ground we were ground
 you were ground you were ground
 he/she/it was ground they were ground
 • *The gear teeth were ground pretty badly.*

COMPLEMENTS

grind *crush, sharpen/smooth/press
 by rubbing*

The wheels of justice grind slow, but
 they grind exceeding fine. [PROVERB]
 The mill grinds continuously when the harvest comes in.

grind *clash/grate noisily*

The gears ground whenever I tried to shift.
 His teeth were grinding loudly.
 The axle wheels were grinding and squeaking.

grind _____ *crush into powder / tiny pieces*

OBJECT

The wheel grinds **the seeds**, separating wheat from chaff.
 The miller is grinding **the corn** into meal.
 The editorial ground **the opposition's argument** to shreds.
 The corn is ground into meal.

PASSIVE

grind _____ *sharpen/smooth by rubbing*

OBJECT

We ground **all the edges** until they shone.
 The lens maker ground **the glass** until it was smooth.

grind _____ *rub together forcefully*

OBJECT

He grinds **his teeth** when he gets really upset.

grind _____ *press/rub with a circular motion*

OBJECT

He ground **the black widow spider** under his heel.
 They ground **the dried herbs** with their hands.

grind _____ *oppress*

OBJECT

The tyrant ground **the colonists** with excessive taxes.

PHRASAL VERBS

grind away at _____ *work steadily on*

She ground away at her thesis.

grind SEP **down** *reduce and destroy
 [someone's] enthusiasm*

This job really grinds me down.

grind _____ **into** *rub into*

The workers ground dirt into the carpet.

grind on *continue, seemingly endlessly*

The Vietnam War ground on for six more years.

grind SEP **out** *produce mechanically,
 churn out*

The novelist grinds out a chapter a day.

grind SEP **up** *reduce to small pieces*

Bill grinds the coffee beans up very fine.

PRESENT

I grow we grow
 you grow you grow
 he/she/it grows they grow
 • *He grows wheat and barley on his land.*

PAST

I grew we grew
 you grew you grew
 he/she/it grew they grew
 • *The kids grew a lot this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has grown

PAST PERFECT ... had grown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am growing we are growing
 you are growing you are growing
 he/she/it is growing they are growing
 • *He is growing up.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was growing we were growing
 you were growing you were growing
 he/she/it was growing they were growing
 • *The passengers were growing angry at the delay.*

FUTURE ... will grow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be growing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have grown

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was grown they were grown
 • *The Fair Trade coffee was grown in Mexico.*

COMPLEMENTS

grow develop, mature

Weeds were growing in the driveway.
 Many flowers won't grow in partial shade.

grow become taller

My, how you've grown!
 The kids are sure growing.

grow become longer

Her hair grew two inches over the summer.

grow become bigger, expand

Our investments have grown about eight percent a year.
 His reputation is growing even outside the region.
 The company is growing through mergers with smaller firms.
 The deficit has grown every year.

grow _____ raise [plants, a crop]

OBJECT

We will grow **more corn** next year.
 We can grow **pansies** in the window boxes.
 It isn't good to grow **the same crop** in a field year after year.

WH-CLAUSE

We will grow **what sells the best**.
 They grow **whatever crops can tolerate the heat**.

grow _____ cause to develop and flourish

OBJECT

We are trying to grow **the business**.
 The company has grown **its profits** effectively.
 The magazine needs to grow **its circulation**.

grow _____ begin

INFINITIVE

I have grown **to like broccoli**.
 I had grown **to hate Senator Blather's speeches**.

grow _____ become

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The driver grew **tired** as evening approached.
 Ruby grew **pale** at the sight of the snake.
 They grew **accustomed** to the boss's angry outbursts.

PHRASAL VERBS

grow into _____ become big enough for

She's grown into her sister's winter coat.

grow into _____ develop into

Your son has grown into a fine young man.
 The banking problem has grown into a major crisis.

grow up to be _____ develop into

She has grown up to be a poised and confident woman.

PRESENT

I hamstring we hamstring
you hamstring you hamstring
he/she/it hamstring they hamstring

• *His opposition hamstringing our reform efforts.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hamstringing we are hamstringing
you are hamstringing you are hamstringing
he/she/it is hamstringing they are hamstringing

• *Endless delay is hamstringing our progress.*

PAST

I hamstring we hamstring
you hamstring you hamstring
he/she/it hamstring they hamstring

• *She hamstringing the project by cutting staff.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hamstringing we were hamstringing
you were hamstringing you were hamstringing
he/she/it was hamstringing they were hamstringing

• *They were hamstringing attempts to pass the bill.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hamstring

PAST PERFECT ... had hamstring

FUTURE ... will hamstring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hamstringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hamstring

PAST PASSIVE

I was hamstringed we were hamstringed
you were hamstringed you were hamstringed
he/she/it was hamstringed they were hamstringed

• *Several cattle were hamstringed by wild wolves.*

COMPLEMENTS

hamstring _____ cripple by cutting the hamstring muscle

OBJECT

Ranchers would often hamstring **dangerous animals.**

PASSIVE

Rebellious slaves were sometimes hamstringed to keep them from running away.

hamstring _____ hinder, make more difficult

OBJECT

Bad weather hamstringed **the rescue efforts.**

PASSIVE

Uncertainty about final approval hamstringing **our planning.**

WH-CLAUSE

Development of the property was hamstringed by local opposition.

PASSIVE

Lack of funding hamstringed **whatever plans we proposed.**

Bureaucratic inertia will always hamstring **whatever we do.**

What we tried to do was hamstringed by insufficient staffing.

PRESENT

I hang we hang
 you hang you hang
 he/she/it hangs they hang
 • *His picture hangs in the boardroom.*

PAST

I hung we hung
 you hung you hung
 he/she/it hung they hung
 • *We hung all the ornaments on the tree.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hung

PAST PERFECT ... had hung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hanging we are hanging
 you are hanging you are hanging
 he/she/it is hanging they are hanging
 • *I'm hanging around until she returns.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hanging we were hanging
 you were hanging you were hanging
 he/she/it was hanging they were hanging
 • *They were hanging out at Tom's house.*

FUTURE

... will hang

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be hanging

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have hung

PAST PASSIVE

I was hung we were hung
 you were hung you were hung
 he/she/it was hung they were hung
 • *The stockings were hung by the chimney.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The past tense and past participle form is *hung* for all meanings of *hang* except one: The form *hanged* is used for the meanings “be suspended by the neck until dead” and “suspend by the neck until dead.”

hang *be suspended by the neck until dead* He will hang for his crimes.
 Black Bart was finally hanged.

hang _____ *be suspended, droop*
 ADVERB OF PLACE

ADVERB OF MANNER

The gulls hung **above the fishing boats**.
 The smoke from the forest fire hung **in the still air**.
 Wet laundry hung **everywhere in the small apartment**.
 The flag was hanging **limply** from the staff.
 His suit hangs **a little too loosely**.
 His head hung **in shame** after his arrest.

hang _____ *be prevalent*
 ADVERB OF PLACE

Before the battle, tension hung **in the air**.

hang _____ *suspend/fasten without support from below, let droop*
 OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE)

We've already hung **the Christmas wreath**.
 We hung **our wet clothing on branches**.
 I hung a **bird feeder in the oak tree**.

PASSIVE

hang _____ *exhibit [artwork]*
 OBJECT

The bridge was hung **from steel cables**.

PASSIVE

hang _____ *suspend by the neck until dead*
 OBJECT
 PASSIVE

They hung **her paintings** in the main gallery.
 I hung **the photograph** in the spring exhibition.
 His pictures have been hung at all the major art shows.

They hanged **the convict** at dawn.
 He was hanged for his many crimes.

PHRASAL VERBS

hang around/out *loiter, linger*
 hang on *wait*
 hang on to _____ *keep*

Leo hung around, waiting for Josh.
 Can you hang on while I take another call?
 Hang on to the baby clothes; you may need them again.

have _____ experience, undergo
OBJECT

have _____ keep in one's mind
OBJECT

have _____ host
OBJECT

have _____ eat, drink
OBJECT

have _____ be the parent(s) of
OBJECT

have _____ study
OBJECT

have _____ position
OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

He had **chicken pox** when he was a child.
Did you have a **good time** at the party?
California had **drought conditions** for several years.
They are having an **argument about visitation rights**.

Senator Blather has an **opinion about everything**.
We have **doubts about the new employee**.
I have an **idea for earning extra money**.

The restaurant is having a **grand opening** this Saturday.

Dan is having **blackberry pie** for dessert.
Tim had a **refill** on his soft drink.

We have **two sons and a daughter**.

Terry had **three years of Spanish** in high school.

Mark had **his hands on the steering wheel**.
The graduate had a **parent on either side of him**.

PHRASAL VERBS

have _____ back/down/over/up/etc.
invite and host [someone] at a specified
location

have _____ against have as a reason
to dislike

have _____ on be operating

have SEP on be wearing

have SEP out have removed

We had the Smiths over for dinner.

She has a grudge against her ex-boyfriend.

She has the radio on when she's at home.

He had on a turtleneck sweater and baggy trousers.

I had one of my upper molars out.

EXPRESSIONS

have had it have done/endured all
that one can

have a big mouth gossip a lot,
reveal secrets a lot

have a bone to pick (with _____) have
something to argue about (with [someone])

have [one's] cake and eat it too / have
it both ways have the advantages of
something without its disadvantages

have it good be rich

I have had it with tax auditors.

Don't tell Joanie your troubles; she has a big mouth.

I have a bone to pick with the editor about his changes.

Denny wants to live in the country, but he wants a
grocery store next door. He can't have his cake and
eat it too.

The bank executive really has it good—a Mercedes,
a mansion, and a vacation home in California.

have it out (with _____)
settle an argument (with
[someone])

have it that _____
claim/say that

have to do with _____
concern, involve

The teacher had it out with the principal.

Rumor has it that Glenda is getting married.

The article has to do with child labor laws.

PRESENT

I have we have
 you have you have
 he/she/it has they have
 • *November only has 30 days.*

PAST

I had we had
 you had you had
 he/she/it had they had
 • *We had a really great time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has had

PAST PERFECT ... had had

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am having we are having
 you are having you are having
 he/she/it is having they are having
 • *I'm having some people over.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was having we were having
 you were having you were having
 he/she/it was having they were having
 • *We were having a lot of problems then.*

FUTURE ... will have

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be having

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have had

PAST PASSIVE

Have is not used in the passive voice except in idiomatic expressions.

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Have* is also used as a helping verb to form the perfect tenses.

have + PAST PARTICIPLE She has read all six of Jane Austen's novels.

have _____ possess, own, contain, include

OBJECT

Do you have **a car**?
 I have **enough food for everyone**.
 Ted has **an interesting news item for us**.
 Do you have **a minute**?
 We have **an office in Tokyo**.
 Does the meeting room have **a projection screen**?
 The department store has **mattresses on sale**.
 A week has **seven days**.
 The knitters' club has **525 members**.

have _____ be characterized by

OBJECT

She has **red hair**.
 He has **a quick temper**.
 My car has **a tendency to stall at stop signs**.

have _____ must

INFINITIVE

I have **to be at the office by 8 o'clock**.
 We have **to stop for gas at the next exit**.
 You will have **to make up your minds soon**.

NOTE: When the information in the infinitive is clear from context, *have* + INFINITIVE is often contracted to *have* + *to*. For example, *Do you have to go now?* may be contracted to *Do you have to?* *Have to* is sometimes pronounced /hafta/.

have _____ cause [to do]

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

I had **the kids put away their toys**.
 He had **me reprint the document**.
 We will have **the builder modify the deck**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

He had **his crew working on the addition**.
 The comedian really had **us laughing**.
 The coach had **the team running wind sprints**.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

I had **my watch repaired**.
 Aunt Jenny had **her hip replaced** this fall.
 They had **the wedding reception catered**.



PRESENT

I hear we hear
 you hear you hear
 he/she/it hears they hear
 • *He only hears what he wants to.*

PAST

I heard we heard
 you heard you heard
 he/she/it heard they heard
 • *I heard that there was a problem.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has heard

PAST PERFECT ... had heard

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hearing we are hearing
 you are hearing you are hearing
 he/she/it is hearing they are hearing
 • *I'm not hearing anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hearing we were hearing
 you were hearing you were hearing
 he/she/it was hearing they were hearing
 • *They were hearing some surprising reports.*

FUTURE

... will hear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have heard

PAST PASSIVE

I was heard we were heard
 you were heard you were heard
 he/she/it was heard they were heard
 • *All witnesses were heard in one afternoon.*

COMPLEMENTS

hear *perceive sound by ear*

She can only hear in the middle frequencies.
 Sam hears pretty well for someone his age.

hear *make out words/music*

Can everybody hear, or should I turn the radio up?
 No one could hear while the band was playing.

hear _____ *perceive by ear*

OBJECT

I just heard **the telephone**.We could hear **the surf** from our room.

PASSIVE

The dog's barking was heard by everyone in the building.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE [USED ONLY
IN THE PASSIVE]He was heard **to make threats**.

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

The senator was heard **to make promises he couldn't keep**.I heard **him start the car**.We heard **the kids turn on the TV**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I heard **her play a Mozart piano concerto**.I heard **him starting the car**.We heard **the kids playing in the backyard**.He heard **someone talking on the phone**.hear _____ *be told, learn*

OBJECT

Did you hear **the news**?I heard **the final score**.

THAT-CLAUSE

John has just heard **the results of his test**.I heard **that Jim is leaving the company**.

WH-CLAUSE

Did you hear **that they are going to have a baby**?Have you heard **who won the game**?I heard **what you said**.hear _____ *listen to the two sides in [a court case]*

OBJECT

The judge heard **three divorce cases** this morning.

PHRASAL VERBS

hear from _____ *receive a message from*

We heard from the Ellners last week.

hear of _____ *learn of the existence of*

I've heard of hedgehogs, but I've never seen one.

hear _____ **out** *listen to everything [someone] has to say*

Simon heard her out, but he didn't change his mind.

PRESENT

I hew we hew
 you hew you hew
 he/she/it hews they hew

• *The gardener hews the hedges back too far.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hewing we are hewing
 you are hewing you are hewing
 he/she/it is hewing they are hewing

• *We are hewing wood to make the fence posts.*

PAST

I hewed we hewed
 you hewed you hewed
 he/she/it hewed they hewed

• *Settlers hewed a clearing in the woods.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hewing we were hewing
 you were hewing you were hewing
 he/she/it was hewing they were hewing

• *The farmers were all hewing their winter firewood.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hewn

PAST PERFECT ... had hewn

FUTURE ... will hew

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hewing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hewn

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was hewn they were hewn

• *The stools were hewn out of solid pieces of wood.*

COMPLEMENTS

hew _____ chop off / cut down / hack through with a sharp tool
 [OFTEN WITH down]

OBJECT

Crews hewed down **hundreds of trees** for the new roadway.
 Have you hewn **all the branches you need**?

PASSIVE

The saplings along the path had all been hewn and stacked.

hew _____ make/shape by cutting/chopping

OBJECT

We hewed a **narrow trail** along the side of the mountain.
 The initial attackers had hewn **an opening** in the enemy line.

PASSIVE

A path had been hewn through the jungle.
 The totem pole was hewn from cedar.

hew _____ adhere/conform strictly

to OBJECT

Candidates must hew **to the party line**.
 Most religions demand that you hew **to certain forms of behavior**.
 Many artists do not hew **to traditional forms**.

EXPRESSIONS

rough-hewn with a rough
 surface/quality

I like the rough-hewn furniture in the
 camp dining hall.

rough-hewn unrefined

These rough-hewn alphabets are from the 19th century.
 My neighbors are rough-hewn in appearance and speech.

PRESENT

I hide we hide
 you hide you hide
 he/she/it hides they hide

• *Our cat always hides in the closet.*

PAST

I hid we hid
 you hid you hid
 he/she/it hid they hid

• *I hid a house key outside.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hidden

PAST PERFECT ... had hidden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hiding we are hiding
 you are hiding you are hiding
 he/she/it is hiding they are hiding

• *I'm hiding from Todd.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hiding we were hiding
 you were hiding you were hiding
 he/she/it was hiding they were hiding

• *They were hiding the money in offshore accounts.*

FUTURE

... will hide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hiding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hidden

PAST PASSIVE

I was hidden we were hidden
 you were hidden you were hidden
 he/she/it was hidden they were hidden

• *The photos were hidden in a closet.*

COMPLEMENTS

hide *keep oneself out of sight, conceal oneself*

The dog hides whenever we get his cage.
 The birds hide in the trees if there is a hawk nearby.
 The kids were hiding behind the tree.
 The thief hid in an abandoned warehouse.

hide _____ *put out of sight, conceal*

OBJECT

The cat had hidden **her kittens** in the attic.
 The burglars hid **themselves** carefully.
 The old lady hid **her money** under her mattress.
 He hid **the stolen property** in the basement.
 Janet hid **her face** behind the newspaper.
 They hid **their business losses** by altering the records.

hide _____ *keep secret*

OBJECT

WH-CLAUSE

I tried to hide **my confusion** by changing the subject.
 The senator hid **who had actually made the campaign contribution**.

They wanted to hide **what they had done**.

Allison never hid **what she was going to do**.

We all want to hide **whatever makes us look foolish**.

hide _____ *keep from being seen*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

A sign hid **the entrance to his office**.

My iPod had been hidden by a stack of books.

PHRASAL VERBS

hide out *conceal oneself for a period of time*

Jesse and Frank James hid out in Meramec Caverns.

EXPRESSIONS

hide [one's] head in the sand *ignore signs of danger*

We hid our heads in the sand when Hitler seized control of the government.

hide [one's] light under a bushel *conceal one's talents/ideas*

Share your suggestions, Donna. Don't hide your light under a bushel.

PRESENT

I hit we hit
 you hit you hit
 he/she/it hits they hit
 • *He always hits his target.*

PAST

I hit we hit
 you hit you hit
 he/she/it hit they hit
 • *The storm hit us pretty hard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hit

PAST PERFECT ... had hit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hitting we are hitting
 you are hitting you are hitting
 he/she/it is hitting they are hitting
 • *I'm hitting a lot of resistance.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hitting we were hitting
 you were hitting you were hitting
 he/she/it was hitting they were hitting
 • *Prices were hitting all-time highs.*

FUTURE ... will hit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be hitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have hit

PAST PASSIVE

I was hit we were hit
 you were hit you were hit
 he/she/it was hit they were hit
 • *Our car was hit by a pickup truck.*

COMPLEMENTS

hit *deliver a blow/setback*

Depression can hit at any time.
 The storm will hit sometime tomorrow morning.
 The shells and bombs were hitting everywhere.

hit _____ *strike, deliver a blow to*
 OBJECT

The batter hit **the pitch** sharply.
 I hit **the target** with the first shot.
 The bullet hit **him** in the left shoulder.
 Our oak tree was hit by lightning.

PASSIVE

hit _____ *cause to suffer, distress*
 OBJECT

A terrible drought has hit **the entire Midwest**.
 A sharp sell-off hit **the market** today.

hit _____ *activate, turn on/off*
 OBJECT

He hit **the brakes** in a panic.
 Hit **the light switch**, will you?
 They always want to hit **the panic button** right away.

hit _____ *reach [a level/goal]*
 OBJECT

Do you think oil will hit **\$100 a barrel**?
 Sales could hit **our goal of 2,000 units** this week.
 A new record was hit on Wall Street today.

PASSIVE

hit _____ *arrive/appear at*
 OBJECT

We should hit **Kansas City** around noon.
 The tourists hit **all the souvenir shops**.

hit _____ *encounter*
 OBJECT

The pilot hit **a headwind** 120 miles from Singapore.
 The research was going well, then we hit **a snag**.

hit _____ *become clear to*
 OBJECT

The smell of garlic hit **me** as soon as I entered the house.
 The solution hit **Johanna** right after lunch.

PHRASAL VERBS

hit on/upon _____ *discover*

She hit upon the idea of extending Medicare to people 55 and over.

hold _____ consider, believe

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

hold _____ conduct

OBJECT

hold _____ have as one's own

OBJECT

hold _____ keep in one's mind, maintain

OBJECT

The judge held **the defendant (to be) blameless**.
I hold **him (to be) fully responsible for the accident**.
“We hold **these truths to be self-evident ...**”
[DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE]

The court held **that citizens have a right to privacy**.
For years, the tobacco industry held **that cigarettes didn't cause cancer**.

The seniors held **a bake sale** for their class trip.
We held **a seminar** for the interns.
The neighbors held **a lively conversation** on the porch.
They will hold **a special exhibit on pre-Columbian art**.
The president will hold **a press conference** on Tuesday.

Amelia Earhart holds **the title of first woman to fly solo across the Atlantic Ocean**.
My wife holds **the office of County Clerk**.

They held **the belief that the earth is flat**.
We will hold **the memory of her** in our hearts forever.

PHRASAL VERBS

hold SEP **back/down/in/out/up/etc.**
keep in a specified position

hold _____ **against [someone]** *have as a reason to think poorly of [someone]*

hold SEP **back** *keep secret, withhold*

hold SEP **down** *have and keep [a job]*

hold SEP **in** *suppress*

hold **off (on)** _____ *delay, postpone*

hold SEP **off** *keep away, resist*

hold **on** *wait*

hold **on** *manage to keep one's position*

hold SEP **on** *secure*

hold **out** *last, endure*

hold **out for** _____ *insist on getting*

hold SEP **over** *keep for more performances*

hold _____ **together** *keep united*

hold **up** *remain in the same condition*

hold SEP **up** *delay, stop*

hold SEP **up** *rob*

hold SEP **up** *support*

A police barricade held the crowd back.
The auctioneer held up an antique butter churn.

She still holds it against him that he has never opened the door for her.

The juror held back the fact that he knew the defendant.
Jake holds down two jobs and takes college classes too.

The candidate is good at holding his emotions in.

She held off asking her parents for more money.

The old woman held the robber off until police arrived.

Hold on while I dry my hands.

Although our team was outscored in the final period, we held on and won the game.

A clasp holds the lid on.

How long will our food hold out?

The settlers held out until the cavalry arrived.

I don't want a cookie; I'm holding out for a cupcake.

The union held out for better working conditions.

The theater held the movie over for six more weeks.

It was Mom who held the family together.

This old house is holding up pretty well.

Sales of soccer balls are holding up in spite of the economy.

The discovery of human remains held up construction for two weeks.

Three teenagers held the store up in broad daylight.

Special bolts hold up the roof of a coal mine.

PRESENT

I hold we hold
 you hold you hold
 he/she/it holds they hold
 • *A barrel holds 55 U.S. gallons.*

PAST

I held we held
 you held you held
 he/she/it held they held
 • *She held that position for years.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has held

PAST PERFECT ... had held

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am holding we are holding
 you are holding you are holding
 he/she/it is holding they are holding
 • *Come on, I'm holding the door.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was holding we were holding
 you were holding you were holding
 he/she/it was holding they were holding
 • *Susan was holding the baby.*

FUTURE ... will hold

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be holding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have held

PAST PASSIVE

I was held we were held
 you were held you were held
 he/she/it was held they were held
 • *The plane was held for transfer passengers.*

COMPLEMENTS

hold *keep one's position*

So far, our defensive line is holding.
 We hope the tent holds in this wind.
 The beautiful weather will hold through the weekend.
 Our market share is still holding.
 The senator's lead in the polls has held steady.
 Please hold still.
 Please hold. Your call is important to us.

hold *stay together / in one piece*

I hope this rope holds.

hold _____ *grasp*

OBJECT

I held **the hammer** in my right hand.
 Please hold **the ladder** while I change the lightbulb.
 Hold **my hand** while we cross the street.

hold _____ *keep steady, maintain, keep control of*

OBJECT

They will hold **their prices** at the current level.
 The runners held **a five-mile-per-hour pace**.
 The house had held **its value** over the years.
 Will you hold **the elevator** for a minute?
 The framework holds **the entire structure** together.
 He needs to hold **his temper** better.
 How long can you hold **your breath**?
 The movie completely held **my attention**.
 The senator held **his audience spellbound**.
 The scream held **everyone frozen in place**.
 The cables hold **the tower rigid**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

hold _____ *keep for later use*

OBJECT

The hotel will hold **the room** for us until 10 P.M.
 Hold **my calls**, please.
 The troops were held in reserve.

PASSIVE

hold _____ *contain, have room for*

OBJECT

The safe deposit box holds **the deed to our house**.
 The tank holds **1,000 gallons**.
 The auditorium can hold **400 people**.



PRESENT

I hurt we hurt
you hurt you hurt
he/she/it hurts they hurt

• *The scandal hurts his re-election chances.*

PAST

I hurt we hurt
you hurt you hurt
he/she/it hurt they hurt

• *I hurt my knee yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has hurt

PAST PERFECT ... had hurt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am hurting we are hurting
you are hurting you are hurting
he/she/it is hurting they are hurting

• *The auto industry is really hurting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was hurting we were hurting
you were hurting you were hurting
he/she/it was hurting they were hurting

• *Lack of money was hurting our program.*

FUTURE

... will hurt

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be hurting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have hurt

PAST PASSIVE

I was hurt we were hurt
you were hurt you were hurt
he/she/it was hurt they were hurt

• *He was hurt playing football.*

COMPLEMENTS

hurt *be a source of pain*

Mommy, my stomach hurts.
My shoulder was hurting again.
This injection may hurt a little.
The loss of so many jobs has got to hurt.

hurt *be in a bad situation*

The entire economy is hurting.

hurt _____ *injure, cause pain/harm to*

OBJECT

He hurt **his back** trying to move the refrigerator.
Listening to such loud music hurts **my ears**.
The new shoes are hurting **my feet**.
Would it hurt **you** to wash the dishes once in a while?
Her feelings were hurt by what they said.

PASSIVE

hurt _____ *damage, harm*

OBJECT

A high interest rate will hurt **car sales**.
The unusually cold summer has hurt **vacation rentals**.
Injuries have hurt **our team's chances**.
The recession is hurting **sales**.
Such negative criticism would hurt **anyone's self-image**.
The dollar has been hurt by high oil prices.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I keep we keep
 you keep you keep
 he/she/it keeps they keep

• *He keeps his keys in the top drawer.*

PAST

I kept we kept
 you kept you kept
 he/she/it kept they kept

• *I kept careful records of all the expenses.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has kept

PAST PERFECT ... had kept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am keeping we are keeping
 you are keeping you are keeping
 he/she/it is keeping they are keeping

• *I am keeping his letters.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was keeping we were keeping
 you were keeping you were keeping
 he/she/it was keeping they were keeping

• *We were keeping the grandchildren for the week.*

FUTURE ... will keep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be keeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have kept

PAST PASSIVE

I was kept we were kept
 you were kept you were kept
 he/she/it was kept they were kept

• *His antique autos were kept in immaculate condition.*

COMPLEMENTS

keep remain in good condition, remain the same

The yogurt will keep for days.
 How long will meat keep in the freezer?
 No secret keeps for very long.
 Will the work keep until tomorrow?

keep _____ hold in one's possession, retain

OBJECT

We kept **all of our children's letters**.
 Keep **the change**.
 The quarterback kept **the ball**.

keep _____ store

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We keep **all of our cash in a safe**.
Where do you keep **the potato chips**?
 We're keeping **the extra envelopes in this drawer**.

keep _____ maintain, take care of

OBJECT

Everyone used to keep **a garden**.
 Are you going to keep **your subscription to the magazine**?
 You need to keep **good records**.

keep _____ continue in an activity/position/condition

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers kept **ready**.
 Keep **warm**!
 Amazingly, the children kept **quiet**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Keep **working**!
 The people behind us kept **talking throughout the concert**.
 The company kept **losing money**.

keep _____ cause to continue in an activity/position/condition

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

Keep **your hands over your head**!
 I kept **my eyes on the road**.
 Kids! Keep **your hands to yourselves**.
 The doctor kept **Alice in the hospital**
 two days longer.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

The president kept **Wilson as ambassador to Great Britain**.
 The team kept **Charlie as captain**.
 The new company kept **Chris as custodian**.



keep _____ cause to continue in an activity/position/condition [continued]

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The soldiers kept **their weapons ready**.

Keep **your feet dry!**

Please try to keep **the room clean**.

The secretary kept **the file secret**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The sergeant kept **the men digging trenches**.

Keep **them talking!**

He always kept **us laughing at his silly jokes**.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

Keep **me informed** about the merger.

keep _____ employ, have in one's service

OBJECT

The hotel keeps a **large housekeeping staff**.

keep _____ adhere to, fulfill

OBJECT

John always keeps **his word**.

PHRASAL VERBS

keep away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.
remain in a specified location

Keep away from the edge
of the bluff.

My parents are coming—keep down!

keep SEP away/back/down/in/off/out/etc.
cause to remain in a specified location

Can you keep the squirrels away from the corn?

It's raining; keep the children in.

keep after/at _____ nag, harass

The teacher keeps after us about our homework.

keep at/on/up _____ continue [doing]

You're doing a great job. Keep at it!

Keep on writing—the paper's due tomorrow.

It kept on snowing for two days.

This report is wonderful. Keep up the good work.

keep SEP down limit

We're trying to keep our grocery bill down.

keep SEP down not vomit

When I had the flu, I couldn't keep food down.

keep ([oneself]) from _____ prevent oneself
from [doing something]

I could hardly keep from laughing at his costume.

I tried to keep myself from screaming at him.

keep [someone] from _____ prevent [someone]
from [doing something]

His counselor kept him from using drugs.

keep SEP in/inside suppress

She kept her anger inside until he left.

keep _____ on continue to employ

The boss hopes to keep all the systems analysts on.

keep _____ on continue to operate

Derek keeps the radio on all night long.

keep SEP on continue to wear [clothing]

It's cold in here; I'll keep my coat on.

keep SEP out provide protection from

This jacket should keep out the rain and wind.

keep out of _____ not become involved in

My sisters are arguing, and I'm keeping out of it.

keep to [oneself] avoid being with other people

The author keeps to himself.

keep _____ to [oneself] not tell

Be sure to keep this to yourself.

keep SEP up maintain

It's not easy for Grandpa to keep up a large house.

We have managed to keep up our family traditions.

Keep your spirits up.

keep up (with _____)
stay even (with
[someone/something])

It's hard to keep up with our rich neighbors.

PRESENT

I kneel we kneel
you kneel you kneel
he/she/it kneels they kneel

• *The priest always kneels before the altar.*

PAST

I knelt we knelt
you knelt you knelt
he/she/it knelt they knelt

• *The clergy all knelt in prayer.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has knelt

PAST PERFECT ... had knelt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am kneeling we are kneeling
you are kneeling you are kneeling
he/she/it is kneeling they are kneeling

• *He is kneeling to reach something under the bed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was kneeling we were kneeling
you were kneeling you were kneeling
he/she/it was kneeling they were kneeling

• *The soldiers were kneeling behind the wall.*

FUTURE ... will kneel

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be kneeling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have knelt

PAST PASSIVE

Kneel is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

kneel *be/rest on one's knee(s)*

Laying floor tiles kept me kneeling
all afternoon.

The policeman was kneeling on one knee when he fired
his pistol.

kneel *show respect/submission by being/
resting on one's knee(s)*

The king forced the rebels to kneel.

The nuns knelt before the cross.

He knelt before the king to be knighted.

They all knelt in prayer.

PHRASAL VERBS

kneel down *go down on one's knee(s)*

I knelt down to pick up the kids' toys.

We all had to kneel down to get through the low doorway.

PRESENT

I knit	we knit
you knit	you knit
he/she/it knits	they knit

• *She knits one sweater every year.*

PAST

I knit	we knit
you knit	you knit
he/she/it knit	they knit

• *The bones knit nicely.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has knit

PAST PERFECT ... had knit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am knitting	we are knitting
you are knitting	you are knitting
he/she/it is knitting	they are knitting

• *I am knitting a wool baby blanket.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was knitting	we were knitting
you were knitting	you were knitting
he/she/it was knitting	they were knitting

• *He was knitting his hands together.*

FUTURE

... will knit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be knitting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have knit

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was knit	they were knit

• *The wall hanging was knit in Scotland.*

COMPLEMENTS

knit *create fabric/clothing by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles*

She knits as a full-time occupation.
A lot of people knit for charity organizations.
My mother knits when she watches TV.

knit *join, grow together*

The broken bone will eventually knit and become strong.
Our neighborhood gradually knit into a close community.

knit _____ *create by interlocking loops of yarn/thread together with needles*

OBJECT

I am knitting **a wool sweater** for a child in Kazakhstan.
Could you knit **a pair of socks** for me?

PASSIVE

The afghan was knit by my grandmother.

knit _____ *cause to join / grow together*

OBJECT

The tree had knit **its roots** into a solid mass.
I knit **my fingers** to form a shallow bowl.
A cast may be required to knit **the broken bone** together.
The major had knit **the unit** into an effective force.

PHRASAL VERBS

knit up *make a knitted item, repair by knitting*

This yarn knits up well.
That scarf pattern knits up quickly.
“Sleep that knits up **the ravell’d sleeve of care.**”
[SHAKESPEARE]

EXPRESSIONS

knit [one’s] brow(s) *wrinkle one’s eyebrows*

Colin knits his brow when he’s thinking.

PRESENT

I know we know
 you know you know
 he/she/it knows they know
 • *He always knows what to say.*

PAST

I knew we knew
 you knew you knew
 he/she/it knew they knew
 • *I knew Ben in graduate school.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has known

PAST PERFECT ... had known

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

PAST PROGRESSIVE

Know is never used in the progressive tenses.

FUTURE ... will know

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE —

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have known

PAST PASSIVE

I was known we were known
 you were known you were known
 he/she/it was known they were known
 • *The problem was known years ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

know *be aware / have knowledge of something*

know _____ *be aware about/of* OBJECT (+ INFINITIVE)

know _____ *be aware of, realize, have information about*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

know _____ *have in one's memory*

OBJECT

know _____ *be acquainted/familiar with*

OBJECT

OBJECT + *as* OBJECT

know _____ *recognize*

OBJECT

"How old is she?" "I don't know."

"Do you think he knows?" "I am sure he doesn't know."

We have known **about his cancer** for several months.
 Do you know **about his refusal to sell the house**?
 I don't know **of another doctor to call**.

I know **the answer**.

Tracy knows **a lot about my personal history**.

We know **the place you mean**.

His password was known only by his wife.

I know **him to be an honest person**.

We have known **the senator to give better speeches**.

The company has been known **to take big risks before**.

We knew **that it was going to be bad**.

They should have known **that we were leaving early**.

Does he know **that we are waiting**?

I know **what you mean**.

Do the tourists know **where they are going**?

Do you know **why he lied to you**?

I don't know **how much it costs**.

He knows **whom to ask**.

Do you know **where to go**?

I know **how to do it**.

Most of the actors know **their lines** well.

I knew **your father** in college.

She knows **everybody in the organization**.

We knew **her as Liddy** when we were kids.

I'd know **his voice** anywhere.

PRESENT

I lead we lead
you lead you lead
he/she/it leads they lead

• *He leads the accounting department.*

PAST

I led we led
you led you led
he/she/it led they led

• *Our policy led to considerable success.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has led

PAST PERFECT ... had led

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leading we are leading
you are leading you are leading
he/she/it is leading they are leading

• *He is leading the investigation.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leading we were leading
you were leading you were leading
he/she/it was leading they were leading

• *We were leading until the last minute.*

FUTURE

... will lead

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be leading

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have led

PAST PASSIVE

I was led we were led
you were led you were led
he/she/it was led they were led

• *The orchestra was led by a young German conductor.*

COMPLEMENTS

lead *guide*

I have never led before.

I can't lead until I know where we are going.

In a formal dance, it is customary for the gentleman to lead.

lead *be first/ahead (in a competition)*

The Giants are leading for the first time.

He has led in every tournament he has played in this year.

lead _____ *be ahead of, be at the head of*

OBJECT

He leads **the league** in goals scored.

Senator Blather will lead **the parade**.

lead _____ *be in charge of*

OBJECT

Admiral Butler is leading **the task force**.

She was leading **the company** at the time.

lead _____ *go [in a direction, to a place]*

ADVERB OF PLACE

This road leads **to my Uncle's farm**.

The path leads **back home**.

His proposal will lead **to disaster**.

lead _____ *guide, conduct*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A guide led **us to the monument**.

He will lead **you wherever you want to go**.

The animals were led **back inside the barn**.

lead _____ *cause, influence*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

The weather forecast led **them to cancel their trip**.

The slow sales led **us to drop the entire product line**.

We were led **to believe that we could get dinner here**.

lead _____ *result in*

to OBJECT

A viral infection can lead **to pneumonia**.

Four years of college leads **to a bachelor's degree**.

lead _____ *live, spend [time]*

OBJECT

Our cats led **pampered lives**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lead SEP *away/back/down/in/on/out/etc. guide in a specified direction*

The police led the suspect away.

The sergeant led the soldiers out.

PRESENT

I leap we leap
 you leap you leap
 he/she/it leaps they leap
 • *Superman leaps tall buildings with ease.*

PAST

I leapt we leapt
 you leapt you leapt
 he/she/it leapt they leapt
 • *He leapt at every opportunity he got.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has leapt

PAST PERFECT ... had leapt

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaping we are leaping
 you are leaping you are leaping
 he/she/it is leaping they are leaping
 • *The frogs are leaping all over the place.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaping we were leaping
 you were leaping you were leaping
 he/she/it was leaping they were leaping
 • *They were leaping out of the basket.*

FUTURE ... will leap

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leaping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have leapt

PAST PASSIVE

I was leapt we were leapt
 you were leapt you were leapt
 he/she/it was leapt they were leapt
 • *The wall was leapt over without any difficulty.*

COMPLEMENTS

leap *jump, spring*

He leaps whenever anybody says “Boo!”
 The kids were all leaping with excitement.
 Antelope were leaping across the savannah.
 The fish were leaping like crazy.
 Our Siamese cat leapt onto Grandmother’s lap.
 He hurt his leg. He can’t leap.
 The defensive player leapt and intercepted the ball.
 The player leapt and slammed the ball into the net.
 I leapt as high as I could.

leap _____ *jump over*

OBJECT

We had to leap **the ditch**.
 The horses leapt **the fence** easily.
 He leapt **every obstacle his opponents put in his way**.

PHRASAL VERBS

leap down/in/off/on/out/over/up/
etc. *jump in a specified direction*

The wagon slowed down, and the boys
 leapt off.
 We were leaping up and down, trying to get their attention.

leap at _____ *accept eagerly*

Max leapt at the chance to be his own boss.
 The club leapt at Kyle’s offer to bring cupcakes.

leap out at _____ *get the
immediate attention of*

The misspelled word leapt out at the proofreader.

EXPRESSIONS

leap for joy *be extremely happy*

Tad won the spelling bee, and his parents leapt for joy.

leap off the page (at _____) *be quickly
noticed (by [someone])*

The typographical error leapt off the page at me.
 The unemployment statistics leapt off the page at her.

leap to mind *suddenly be thought of*

The author that leaps to mind is William Faulkner.

leap to [one’s] feet *jump up excitedly*

The audience leapt to its feet and shouted, “Encore!”

leap to conclusions *make a hasty
judgment without knowing the facts*

Until you have read the entire article, don’t leap to conclusions.

leave _____ deliver/provide before going away

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

They left **you** a message.

I am leaving **the waiter** a big tip.

We left **the kids** some cookies.

They left a message **for you**.

I am leaving a big tip **for the waiter**.

We left **some cookies for the kids**.

leave _____ allow/give [someone] to do

OBJECT + for OBJECT

OBJECT + to OBJECT

OBJECT + with OBJECT

My older sister left **the dishes for me**.

The boss will leave **the decision to his assistant**.

While I'm in Toronto, I'm going to leave **the project with you**.

leave _____ give at one's death (often by a will)

OBJECT + to OBJECT

Grandfather left **his stamp collection to his granddaughter**.

Mr. Plavsik left **all his money to charity**.

PHRASAL VERBS

leave _____ down/out/up/etc.

allow to remain in a specified position

Please leave the window up when you're finished in the room.

leave for _____ depart in the direction of

We will be leaving for the airport in 10 minutes.

leave off (_____) stop temporarily

Now, where did we leave off at yesterday's meeting?

The staff left off trying to organize a company picnic.

leave SEP off/on not put off/on

He left his jacket off in the classroom.

She left her coat on because it was chilly inside.

leave SEP out (of _____) omit, exclude (from [something])

Harry left out all references to World War Two.

Mrs. Crabtree left Norman out of her will.

leave SEP on not switch off

Leave the light on when you leave the room.

EXPRESSIONS

leave _____ open not schedule another activity on [a day/date]

Leave next Saturday open for the bake sale.

leave a bad taste in [one's] mouth

cause one to have a lingering bad impression

The argument over immigration left a bad taste in my mouth.

leave no stone unturned search everywhere, do everything possible

The police left no stone unturned in looking for the murderer.

leave _____ alone/be not disturb

Leave me alone—I'm trying to study.

We should leave the matter be for the moment.

leave _____ out in the cold not keep [someone] informed

The rest of the staff left her out in the cold with regard to the new project.

leave (some) loose ends not finish a project, not solve a problem

The movie rushed the ending and left some loose ends.

be left (over) remain

Is there any chocolate cake left?

Some potato salad is left over from the picnic.

Half a skein of yarn is left over from my sweater project.

PRESENT

I leave we leave
 you leave you leave
 he/she/it leaves they leave
 • *He always leaves home by eight.*

PAST

I left we left
 you left you left
 he/she/it left they left
 • *I left you a little surprise.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has left

PAST PERFECT ... had left

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am leaving we are leaving
 you are leaving you are leaving
 he/she/it is leaving they are leaving
 • *I'm leaving the porch light on.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was leaving we were leaving
 you were leaving you were leaving
 he/she/it was leaving they were leaving
 • *We were just leaving the garage when they called.*

FUTURE ... will leave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be leaving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have left

PAST PASSIVE

I was left we were left
 you were left you were left
 he/she/it was left they were left
 • *Water stains were left all over the ground floor.*

COMPLEMENTS

leave go away, depart

We are leaving soon.
 When can you leave?
 I am not leaving until this is settled.

leave _____ go away from, depart
 OBJECT

Elvis has left **the building**.
 The train will leave **the station** at 10:13 A.M.
 I left **the office** early that day.

leave _____ abandon, quit
 OBJECT

He left **the university** in his junior year.
 Ray has just left **his wife**.
 I left **the law firm** some time ago.

leave _____ cause/allow to remain behind
 OBJECT

Red wine always leaves **a stain**.
 He left **a fortune** after his death.
 The surgery will leave **a little scar**.
 I left **my coat with the concierge**.
 The kids left **footprints on the tile floor**.
 She left **her purse on the park bench**.
 Somebody's tickets were left **on the counter**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

PASSIVE

leave _____ cause/allow to remain/be in a certain state
 OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

The accident left **him a broken man**.
 The fire left **the building a ruined shell**.
 The training left **the division a formidable fighting force**.

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The movie left **me confused**.
 We had to leave **the children alone** for a few hours.
 The incident left **us speechless**.
 Please leave **the door open**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Riding a bicycle leaves **Bill out of breath**.
 I left **the kids finishing up their homework**.
 The comedian left **the audience roaring with laughter**.
 We left **the plumber ripping out the old sink**.
 Leave **the engine running**.



PRESENT

I lend we lend
you lend you lend
he/she/it lends they lend

• *The bank lends money for new cars.*

PAST

I lent we lent
you lent you lent
he/she/it lent they lent

• *The bank lent them the money.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lent

PAST PERFECT ... had lent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lending we are lending
you are lending you are lending
he/she/it is lending they are lending

• *I am lending the truck to Anne for the weekend.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lending we were lending
you were lending you were lending
he/she/it was lending they were lending

• *The banks were not lending at that time.*

FUTURE

... will lend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be lending

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have lent

PAST PASSIVE

I was lent we were lent
you were lent you were lent
he/she/it was lent they were lent

• *The book was lent to me by a friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

lend give money on condition of
repayment (plus interest)

Banks are not lending now.
Who can afford to lend?
Who is still lending these days?

lend _____ allow temporary use of on condition of return/payment

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I lent **Peter my lawnmower.**

I can lend **you \$25.**

Could I have lent **someone the library book?**

to PARAPHRASE

I lent **my lawnmower to Peter.**

I can lend **\$25 to you.**

Could I have lent **the library book to someone?**

NOTE: Many speakers prefer to use the verb *loan* (rather than *lend*) when referring to money. For example, they would say “The bank will *loan* you the money” rather than “The bank will *lend* you the money.” Both are grammatically correct.

lend _____ make available to

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

The Red Cross lent **the flood relief effort its services.**

The Red Cross lent **its services to the flood relief effort.**

lend _____ add

OBJECT + to OBJECT

The confetti and beads lend **gaiety to the Mardi Gras parade.**

The bowl of fruit lends **color to an otherwise dull painting.**

PHRASAL VERBS

lend itself to _____ be suitable for

The gathering room lends itself to
intimate conversation.

lend SEP out allow temporary use
of on condition of return

We lent out our copy of Jane Austen’s *Pride and Prejudice*.

EXPRESSIONS

lend an/[one’s] ear (to _____) listen
(to [someone])

The president is speaking; lend an ear.

“Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.”

[SHAKESPEARE]

PRESENT

I let we let
 you let you let
 he/she/it lets they let

• *He lets us know if there is a problem.*

PAST

I let we let
 you let you let
 he/she/it let they let

• *I let the dogs run in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has let

PAST PERFECT ... had let

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am letting we are letting
 you are letting you are letting
 he/she/it is letting they are letting

• *The coach is letting them try again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was letting we were letting
 you were letting you were letting
 he/she/it was letting they were letting

• *We were letting too many mistakes get through.*

FUTURE ... will let

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be letting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have let

PAST PASSIVE

I was let we were let
 you were let you were let
 he/she/it was let they were let

• *Several staff members were let go recently.*

COMPLEMENTS

let _____ allow, permit

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

The referee let **the game continue**.

We let **the kids watch TV for a while after dinner**.

Don't let **them leave without me**.

Let **me go!**

let's _____ [CONTRACTION OF **let us**; A WAY TO SUGGEST DOING SOMETHING]

BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

Let's **go home now**.

Let's **find out what happened**.

Let's **not do that**.

PHRASAL VERBS

let SEP **by/down/in/off/on/out/through/up/etc.** allow to come/go in a specified direction

Let the children in.

The bus stopped and let off two passengers.

Let the dog out.

Stop wrestling and let your brother up.

Son, you've let your parents down again.

let SEP **down** disappoint

The policeman let the boys off with a warning.

let SEP **off (easy) (with _____)** forgive/release (with [little/no punishment])

The teacher let me off easy.

let **off/out** _____ release, emit

The teakettle let off a loud whistle.

let **on** _____ pretend

Barry is letting on that he knows about the crisis.

let **on** _____ admit

Charlotte never let on that she was my sister.

let **out** end

When does the movie let out?

let **up** slow down, diminish

The rain appears to be letting up.

EXPRESSIONS

let **alone** _____ not to mention, much less

The patient can't walk, let alone run.

I don't have time to read a chapter, let alone the whole book.

let _____ **alone/be** not disturb

Let your sister alone. Let her be.

let _____ **go** fire, lay off

The company let four mechanics go last Friday.

let **go/loose of** _____ release, stop gripping

If we let go of the rope, we'll fall into the river.

PRESENT

I lie	we lie
you lie	you lie
he/she/it lies	they lie

• *The responsibility lies with all of us.*

PAST

I lay	we lay
you lay	you lay
he/she/it lay	they lay

• *The ship lay at anchor for a week.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lain

PAST PERFECT ... had lain

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lying	we are lying
you are lying	you are lying
he/she/it is lying	they are lying

• *The cat is lying asleep on the couch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lying	we were lying
you were lying	you were lying
he/she/it was lying	they were lying

• *The book was lying on your desk.*

FUTURE ... will lie

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be lying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lain

PAST PASSIVE

Lie is never used in the passive voice.

NOTE: The irregular verb *lie* is presented here. The regular verb *lie* (*lie* | *lies* · *lied* · *have lied*) means “say something that isn’t true”; it may be used without an object (*The suspect is lying*) or with a THAT-CLAUSE (*She lied that her husband was home all evening*).

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verbs *lie* and *lay* are often confused, in part because the past tense form of *lie* (*lay*) is the same as the present tense form of *lay*.

INFINITIVE	PRESENT	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	BASIC MEANING
lie	lie	lay	have lain	“be in a horizontal position”
lay	lay	laid	have laid	“put in a horizontal position”

The two verbs are historically related in an odd way: *To lay* means “to cause something to *lie*.” In other words, *lay* always requires a direct object, while *lie* is never used with a direct object.

lie *be buried*

Here lie the bones of the city’s founder.

lie _____ *be located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The report is lying **right in front of you**.

The town lies **in the Thames valley**.

His few hairs lay **across his bald head**.

The ocean lies **to the west**.

lie _____ *be/stay in a horizontal position*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The ocean lay **flat** as far as we could see.

The tablecloth lay **perfectly smooth**.

lie _____ *be/stay in a certain state/condition*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The cat lay **motionless**, watching the bird.

The town lay **helpless** in front of the invading army.

The nurse told him to lie **still** while she examined him.

The paintings had lain **hidden** in a barn for 50 years.

lie _____ *be, exist*

in OBJECT

with OBJECT

The confusion lies **in our conflicting goals**.

The problem lies **with senior management**.

lie _____ *affect*

on OBJECT

The wrongful conviction lies heavily **on the prosecutors**.

His extramarital affair lies heavily **on his conscience**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lie ahead/around/back/behind/below/down/etc. *be/rest in a specified position*

She lay back and relaxed in the afternoon sun.
I’ll lie down for an hour.

PRESENT

I light	we light
you light	you light
he/she/it lights	they light

• *Her face lights up when she smiles.*

PAST

I lit	we lit
you lit	you lit
he/she/it lit	they lit

• *I lit the candles on the birthday cake.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lit

PAST PERFECT ... had lit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am lighting	we are lighting
you are lighting	you are lighting
he/she/it is lighting	they are lighting

• *I am lighting a fire.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was lighting	we were lighting
you were lighting	you were lighting
he/she/it was lighting	they were lighting

• *Only candles were lighting the dining room.*

FUTURE

... will light

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be lighting

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have lit

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was lit	they were lit

• *The room was lit only by the fireplace.*

COMPLEMENTS

light catch fire

The pile of dry leaves and twigs finally lit.
 The smoldering coals lit with a whoosh.
 The damp wood never lit.

light _____ ignite, set fire to, cause to burn

OBJECT

Sparks from the train lit **trash along the track**.
 We should light **the lantern** before it gets dark.
 The fire was lit by an electrical short circuit in the wall.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I lit **them a candle**.
 We will light **them a fire**.

for PARAPHRASE

I lit **a candle for them**.
 We will light **a fire for them**.

light _____ illuminate

OBJECT

We used torches to light **the path**.
 The campfire lit **the boys' faces**.
 The golden moon lit **the southern sky**.
 The street was lit by the burning buildings.

PASSIVE

light _____ guide with a light

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We lit **the children to their rooms** with the lantern.
 "And all our yesterdays have lighted **fools the way to dusty death**." [SHAKESPEARE]

PHRASAL VERBS

light up brighten

The black night lit up with occasional
 flashes of lightning.
 Her face lit up when she heard the news.

EXPRESSIONS

light a fire under _____ cause to
 move/work faster/harder

The coach's tirade lit a fire under his
 sluggish team.

PRESENT

I lose we lose
 you lose you lose
 he/she/it loses they lose
 • *My team always loses.*

PAST

I lost we lost
 you lost you lost
 he/she/it lost they lost
 • *I lost my glasses again.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has lost

PAST PERFECT ... had lost

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am losing we are losing
 you are losing you are losing
 he/she/it is losing they are losing
 • *I am losing patience with them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was losing we were losing
 you were losing you were losing
 he/she/it was losing they were losing
 • *We were losing money on every transaction.*

FUTURE ... will lose

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be losing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have lost

PAST PASSIVE

I was lost we were lost
 you were lost you were lost
 he/she/it was lost they were lost
 • *The battle was lost in the first few minutes.*

COMPLEMENTS

lose not win, be defeated

The team has never lost this season.
 The longer you gamble, the more certain you are to lose.
 The Patriots lost by 14 points.

lose _____ not win, be defeated in

OBJECT

Napoleon never lost **a battle**—except the last one.
 You can win a battle, but still lose **the war**.
 I lost **my bet with Sam**.

lose _____ be deprived of

OBJECT

We lost **some dear friends** in the war.
 He has lost **the use of his left hand**.
 The senator has lost **their support**.

lose _____ misplace, be unable to find

OBJECT

I lost **the key to my desk**.
 The guide lost **his way** in the woods.
 I lost **my place in the book**.
 The mountain climbers were lost in the avalanche.

PASSIVE

lose _____ fail to keep/maintain

OBJECT

The cat is losing **its hair**.
 My watch is losing **time**.
 The sink has been losing **water** for days.
 The boat was losing **speed**.
 I lost **control of the motorcycle**.

lose _____ get rid of

OBJECT

I finally lost **some weight**.

lose _____ fail to make use of

OBJECT

The company lost **a great opportunity to expand**.
 Don't lose **any time** getting to the bookstore.

lose _____ cause to be deprived of

INDIRECT OBJECT + OBJECT

His position on immigration lost **him a lot of votes**.

PHRASAL VERBS

lose out (to _____) be unsuccessful
 [in a competition (with [someone])]

I applied for the job, but I lost out
 to a younger applicant.

PRESENT

I make we make
 you make you make
 he/she/it makes they make
 • *She makes an excellent salary.*

PAST

I made we made
 you made you made
 he/she/it made they made
 • *I made lunch for my in-laws.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has made

PAST PERFECT ... had made

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am making we are making
 you are making you are making
 he/she/it is making they are making
 • *I'm making some coffee.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was making we were making
 you were making you were making
 he/she/it was making they were making
 • *We were making pretty good time.*

FUTURE ... will make

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be making

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have made

PAST PASSIVE

I was made we were made
 you were made you were made
 he/she/it was made they were made
 • *Mistakes were made at every level.*

COMPLEMENTS

make _____ prepare, build, create, produce

OBJECT

I am going to make **a tuna salad**.
 We made **a little shed for the bicycles**.
 I made **a bookcase** out of mahogany.
 My wife made **a sweater** out of merino wool.
 I can make **a booklet of your favorite quotations**.
 It's chilly in here; would you make **a fire**?
 We're making **plans for spring break**.
 The president's children make **their own beds**.
 Carpenters made **a hole in the wall** for a window.
 His masterpiece was made in 1683.
 We will make **Thomas a Halloween costume**.
 The florist made **Ruth a terrific centerpiece**.
 His company made **us some custom cabinets**.
 His company made **some custom cabinets for us**.
 I can only make **what I have supplies for**.
 I will make **whatever you want** for your birthday.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

for PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

make _____ do, perform

OBJECT

Senator Blather made **a speech** at the YMCA.
 Make **a left turn** at the second traffic light.

make _____ cause to happen/exist

OBJECT

The dog made **a terrible mess** again.
 The two parties made **a deal**.
 Decisions have to be made quickly.

PASSIVE

make _____ cause to be, appoint, give a job/position to

OBJECT + PREDICATE NOUN

He made **the company a household name**.
 The company made **her vice president**.
 The board made **Boyd the CEO**.
 Tom was made **a captain** in 2005.
 The new job made **Janet very happy**.
 These paintings make the **living room cheerful**.
 Long meetings after lunch make **me sleepy**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE



make _____ *force, cause*

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

They made **me do it!**

The earthquake made **the windows rattle.**

The officials made **the teams replay the game.**

make _____ *be used to produce*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

Cotton rags make **the best paper.**

The sculpture was made entirely of driftwood.

make _____ *earn, succeed in achieving*

OBJECT

You could make **a lot of money** doing that.

We made **about 500 miles** driving today.

make _____ *amount to, total*

OBJECT

Four quarts make **a gallon.**

Three feet make **a yard.**

make _____ *arrive at*

OBJECT

Glen will make **Phoenix** by tomorrow afternoon.

make _____ *be on time for*

OBJECT

Do you think we can make **the 2 o'clock flight?**

Three students didn't make **the deadline for submitting papers.**

PHRASAL VERBS

make away/off with _____ *steal*

The robbers made away with \$3,500.

They made off with my briefcase too.

make for _____ *go toward*

The soldier made for the nearest foxhole.

make for _____ *result in*

Good pitching and hitting make for a successful team.

make like _____ *pretend to be, imitate*

Dad made like a dinosaur and tromped around the room.

make out *succeed*

Gavin made out very well during the dot-com bubble.

make SEP **out** *distinguish, decipher*

I can barely make out the road in the snowstorm.

The bank teller couldn't make out the signature on the check.

make SEP **out** *fill out*

Make the check out to the agency for \$25.

make SEP **out** *understand*

We couldn't make out what the professor was saying.

make SEP **over** *change the appearance of*

The programmer made over his cubicle with movie posters.

make [someone] **out** _____ *describe [someone], usually falsely*

Dixie's parents made her out to be a perfect student.

make up *become friendly after a quarrel*

Luke and Lana finally made up after two weeks of not speaking to one another.

make up _____ *form, be the parts of*

These servers make up the backbone of our network.

The task force was made up of cruisers and destroyers.

make SEP **up** *put together, prepare*

I made up a pot of chili in 30 minutes.

make SEP **up** *invent*

Gary made up a story about a dog stealing his homework.

make SEP **up** *apply cosmetics to*

The artist made her up to look like a witch.

make SEP **up** *do [something] that one has missed*

I have to make myself up before going out.

Jan was sick and has to make up the test on Monday.

make up for _____ *compensate for*

How can I make up for the trouble I've caused you?

PRESENT

I mean we mean
 you mean you mean
 he/she/it means they mean
 • *A warm wind means that it will rain.*

PAST

I meant we meant
 you meant you meant
 he/she/it meant they meant
 • *I always meant to try skydiving.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has meant

PAST PERFECT ... had meant

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meaning we are meaning
 you are meaning you are meaning
 he/she/it is meaning they are meaning
 • *We are meaning to go to town tomorrow.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meaning we were meaning
 you were meaning you were meaning
 he/she/it was meaning they were meaning
 • *I was meaning to fix that.*

FUTURE ... will mean

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be meaning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have meant

PAST PASSIVE

I was meant we were meant
 you were meant you were meant
 he/she/it was meant they were meant
 • *No harm was meant.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The verb *mean* is used in the progressive tenses only in the sense “intend, plan.”

mean _____ signify, indicate

OBJECT

“Aloha” means **both “hello” and “goodbye”** in Hawaiian.
 A rainbow means **good luck**.
 It doesn’t mean **anything**.
 Thanks. That meant **a lot to me**.
 This means **war!**

THAT-CLAUSE

The flare means **that there has been an accident**.
 The whistle means **that it is time to quit**.
 A heavy snowfall means **that there will be no school**.

WH-CLAUSE

It can’t mean **what I think it means**.
 It means **whatever you want it to mean**.

mean _____ intend, plan

(for) OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I meant (for) **you to do that**.
 He was meaning (for) **us to finish up here**.
 The truck was meant **to stay with the crew**.
 We meant **to stop off and do some shopping**.
 They didn’t mean **to do anything wrong**.
 I was meaning **to tell you about that**.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

mean _____ intend [TO EXPLAIN A PREVIOUS STATEMENT]

THAT-CLAUSE

I meant **that you should wait in my office**.
 He meant **that he might have made a mistake**.

EXPRESSIONS

mean business *be serious*

He jokes with reporters, but he means business.

mean everything / the world to _____
be very important to

Jeanine’s fiancé means everything to her.
 My environmental work means the world to me.

mean nothing to _____ *not be very important to*

Her criticism means nothing to me.

mean nothing to _____ *not make sense to*

This paragraph will mean nothing to the reader.

mean well *have good intentions*

Ed is a little eccentric, but he means well.

PRESENT

I meet we meet
 you meet you meet
 he/she/it meets they meet

• *The stationmaster meets every train.*

PAST

I met we met
 you met you met
 he/she/it met they met

• *I never met your brother.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has met

PAST PERFECT ... had met

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am meeting we are meeting
 you are meeting you are meeting
 he/she/it is meeting they are meeting

• *Excuse me, I am meeting someone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was meeting we were meeting
 you were meeting you were meeting
 he/she/it was meeting they were meeting

• *We were meeting in the conference room.*

FUTURE

... will meet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be meeting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have met

PAST PASSIVE

I was met we were met
 you were met you were met
 he/she/it was met they were met

• *We were met at the airport by the tour guide.*

COMPLEMENTS

meet *come together for a particular purpose*

We will meet next Tuesday.

“When shall we three meet again?” [SHAKESPEARE]

Can we meet for lunch tomorrow?

These same two teams will meet in the playoffs.

meet *be joined*

The hiking paths meet at the top of the hill.

meet *become acquainted, be introduced*

Our in-laws will meet in person for the first time.

It is amazing that we never met before.

meet *come into contact*

The gates have never met properly because they sag.

Their lips met tenderly.

The sliding doors met with a thud.

meet _____ *come together by arrangement*

OBJECT

I met **Carrie** for lunch today.

I can't meet **them** until next week.

You will meet **with the search committee** this afternoon.

with OBJECT

meet _____ *become acquainted with*

OBJECT

When did you first meet **your husband**?

Guess **whom** I met today!

meet _____ *fulfill, satisfy, pay*

OBJECT

I still have to meet **my undergraduate science requirement**.

Can he meet **the deadline for the grant application**?

Her organization works to meet **the needs of the homeless**.

If you meet **our demands**, no one will get hurt.

They might not be able to meet **their mortgage payment**.

The terms of the agreement have not been met.

PASSIVE

meet _____ *be present at the arrival of*

OBJECT

Someone needs to meet **the train**.

We should meet **their plane** tomorrow.

Everyone will meet **the boats** when they cross the finish line.

meet _____ *encounter, experience*

OBJECT

Our plans really met **an obstacle** today.

My great-great-grandfather met **his death** in the Great War.

The proposal met **a stone wall** in the committee hearing.

PRESENT

I mistake	we mistake
you mistake	you mistake
he/she/it mistakes	they mistake

• *He always mistakes peoples' names.*

PAST

I mistook	we mistook
you mistook	you mistook
he/she/it mistook	they mistook

• *I mistook what he said.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has mistaken

PAST PERFECT ... had mistaken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mistaking	we are mistaking
you are mistaking	you are mistaking
he/she/it is mistaking	they are mistaking

• *You are mistaking me for somebody else.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mistaking	we were mistaking
you were mistaking	you were mistaking
he/she/it was mistaking	they were mistaking

• *People were always mistaking his car for a taxi.*

FUTURE

... will mistake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be mistaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have mistaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was mistaken	we were mistaken
you were mistaken	you were mistaken
he/she/it was mistaken	they were mistaken

• *They were mistaken for spies.*

COMPLEMENTS

mistake _____ identify incorrectly

OBJECT + for OBJECT

I'm sorry, I mistook **you for an employee.**

Everyone mistakes **him for his brother.**

I must have mistaken **the olive oil for the vinegar.**

We were mistaken **for another couple.**

PASSIVE

mistake _____ misunderstand, misjudge

OBJECT

I totally mistook **the situation.**

Did you mistake **the answer?**

I badly mistook **the nature of their relationship.**

No one could mistake **what the candidate stood for.**

I mistook **what was going on.**

We must have mistaken **where they said they were going.**

WH-CLAUSE

PRESENT

I mow	we mow
you mow	you mow
he/she/it mows	they mow

• *He mows the lawn on the weekends.*

PAST

I mowed	we mowed
you mowed	you mowed
he/she/it mowed	they mowed

• *I mowed the grass before it rained.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has mown

PAST PERFECT ... had mown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am mowing	we are mowing
you are mowing	you are mowing
he/she/it is mowing	they are mowing

• *I'll call you back later; I'm mowing the lawn now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was mowing	we were mowing
you were mowing	you were mowing
he/she/it was mowing	they were mowing

• *She was mowing the backyard for her allowance.*

FUTURE

... will mow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be mowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have mown

PAST PASSIVE

I was mown	we were mown
you were mown	you were mown
he/she/it was mown	they were mown

• *The lawn was mown just yesterday.*

COMPLEMENTS

mow cut grass with a machine

Someone is mowing in back of the house.
 How often do you have to mow?
 My neighbor can't get his lawn tractor to mow evenly.

mow _____ cut down [grass, grain, etc.] with a machine

OBJECT

The city hired me to mow **all of the playing fields**.
 A highway crew was mowing **the roadside**.
 I can't mow **the lawn** until it gets dry.
 They really need to mow **their yard** more often.
 In the fields, farmers were mowing, raking, and bundling **hay**.
 The lawn will be mown as soon as we can get to it.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

mow SEP down knock/shoot down

An SUV swerved onto the sidewalk
 and mowed three pedestrians down.
 Enemy snipers mowed down the entire platoon
 with machine guns.

PRESENT

I overcome we overcome
you overcome you overcome
he/she/it overcomes they overcome
• *He always overcomes his problems.*

PAST

I overcame we overcame
you overcame you overcame
he/she/it overcame they overcame
• *She always overcame obstacles.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has overcome

PAST PERFECT ... had overcome

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am overcoming we are overcoming
you are overcoming you are overcoming
he/she/it is overcoming they are overcoming
• *He is overcoming a serious injury.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was overcoming we were overcoming
you were overcoming you were overcoming
he/she/it was overcoming they were overcoming
• *They were gradually overcoming their opposition.*

FUTURE ... will overcome

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be overcoming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have overcome

PAST PASSIVE

I was overcome we were overcome
you were overcome you were overcome
he/she/it was overcome they were overcome
• *He was overcome with emotion.*

COMPLEMENTS

overcome prevail, fight and win

“We shall overcome.” [GOSPEL SONG]
They have finally overcome.

overcome be strongly affected
[USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

They were overcome with emotion.
The children were overcome with excitement.
Mr. Darcy was overcome by Elizabeth’s goodness.
Three firemen were overcome by smoke.

overcome _____ prevail over, defeat, get control of
OBJECT

The prisoners overcome **their guards**.
He overcame **all of his personal problems**.
She overcame **her addiction to cigarette smoking**.
The revised proposal overcome **the board’s initial resistance**.
Mr. Knightley eventually overcomes **his concerns about Emma’s foolishness**.

PASSIVE

The guards were overcome by the prisoners.

PRESENT

I overtake we overtake
you overtake you overtake
he/she/it overtakes they overtake

• *She overtakes her opponents one by one.*

PAST

I overtook we overtook
you overtook you overtook
he/she/it overtook they overtook

• *He overtook the leader with three laps left.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has overtaken

PAST PERFECT ... had overtaken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am overtaking we are overtaking
you are overtaking you are overtaking
he/she/it is overtaking they are overtaking

• *Laptops are overtaking desktops.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was overtaking we were overtaking
you were overtaking you were overtaking
he/she/it was overtaking they were overtaking

• *A motorcycle was overtaking the convoy.*

FUTURE ... will overtake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be overtaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have overtaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was overtaken we were overtaken
you were overtaken you were overtaken
he/she/it was overtaken they were overtaken

• *I was overtaken by sleep on the bus ride to the airport.*

COMPLEMENTS

overtake _____ *catch up with and pass*

OBJECT

The police overtook **the speeding car** at the next exit.
China will overtake **Japan** as the world's second-largest economy.
Do you think that digital books will overtake **traditional books**?
Internet advertising has already overtaken **TV advertising**.

overtake _____ *happen to unexpectedly*

OBJECT

A feeling of peace and contentment was overtaking **me** as I lay on the sofa.
Cancer overtook **my boss** when he was only 53 years old.

PRESENT

I prove we prove
you prove you prove
he/she/it proves they prove

• *His experiment proves that we are right.*

PAST

I proved we proved
you proved you proved
he/she/it proved they proved

• *It proved to be much more difficult.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has proven

PAST PERFECT ... had proven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am proving we are proving
you are proving you are proving
he/she/it is proving they are proving

• *Cal is proving to be a bit of a problem.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was proving we were proving
you were proving you were proving
he/she/it was proving they were proving

• *Francine was proving to be a great success.*

FUTURE

... will prove

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be proving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have proven

PAST PASSIVE

I was proven we were proven
you were proven you were proven
he/she/it was proven they were proven

• *His guilt was never proven.*

COMPLEMENTS

prove _____ demonstrate that something is true/correct

OBJECT

For homework, Johanna told the students to prove **the theorem**.

I can prove **my claim**.

PASSIVE

The validity of the will was proven in court.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

Sandra has proven **herself as an astronaut**.

Emily has proven **herself as a teacher**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The lawyer proved **the defendant (to be) an innocent bystander**.

Her boyfriend's subsequent behavior proved **him (to be) a complete loser**.

Placido has proven **himself (to be) an excellent shortstop**.

OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Our analysis proved **the plan (to be) feasible**.

Madeline has proven **herself (to be) fearless**.

to OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

He proved **to us that he had been right all along**.

Can they prove **to the police that they were not involved in the crime?**

THAT-CLAUSE

In 1616, William Harvey proved **that blood circulates**.

The police proved **that the driver was lying**.

WH-CLAUSE

Can they prove **who caused the accident?**

I can prove **what I am saying**.

prove _____ turn out [to be]

(to be) PREDICATE NOUN

Our guide proved **(to be) a stranger to the region**.

Our hotel proved **(to be) a dumpsy guest house**.

Her suggestion proved **(to be) a stroke of pure genius**.

(to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The guide proved **(to be) quite unreliable**.

Their claim proved **(to be) false**.

Our best guess proved **(to be) totally wrong**.

PRESENT

I put we put
you put you put
he/she/it puts they put

• *He always puts his car in the garage.*

PAST

I put we put
you put you put
he/she/it put they put

• *I put the package on his desk.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has put

PAST PERFECT ... had put

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am putting we are putting
you are putting you are putting
he/she/it is putting they are putting

• *I am putting the dishes into the dishwasher.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was putting we were putting
you were putting you were putting
he/she/it was putting they were putting

• *The kids were putting peanut butter on their fruit.*

FUTURE ... will put

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be putting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have put

PAST PASSIVE

I was put we were put
you were put you were put
he/she/it was put they were put

• *The documents were put into the safe.*

COMPLEMENTS

put _____ place, set

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I always put **my keys** *on the dresser*.
We put **the new rug** *in the living room*.
The guards put **a barricade** *across the road*.
She put **her hand** *under the kitten* to lift it.
Terry put **her knitting** *aside* and picked up a book.
The clerk put **a price of \$49.99** *on the dress*.
The coach put **pressure** *on the team*.
The picture was put **above** *the fireplace*.

PASSIVE

put _____ insert

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I put **the key** *into the lock* and turned it.
We put **the note** *under his door*.
The telephone company will put **a new satellite** *into orbit*.
You will need to put **your car** *into the garage*.
The suitcases were put **into** *the closet*.

PASSIVE

put _____ cause to be in a certain condition/state

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

His lectures put **me** *to sleep* sometimes.
The CEO's decision put **3,000 people** *out of work*.
Don't put **yourself** *in danger*.
He always puts **me** *in a good mood*.
I'd like to put **the old lawn mower** *to good use*.

put _____ express, say

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I thought he put **it** *very well*.
You will need to put **your ideas** *in a simpler form*.
I put **my comments** *in writing*.
His complaints were put **rather rudely**,
I thought.

PASSIVE



PHRASAL VERBS

put SEP **across** *communicate successfully*

put SEP **aside** *save*

put SEP **away** *store*

put SEP **away** *eat/drink a lot of*

put SEP **down** *overcome with force, suppress*

put SEP **down** *write down*

put SEP **down** *include on a list*

put SEP **down** *find fault with, insult*

put SEP **down** *pay as the first installment*

put **forth** _____ *grow [PLANTS]*

put SEP **forth/forward** *propose, suggest*

put SEP **in** *add*

put SEP **in** *install*

put **in for** _____ *formally request*

put SEP **off** *repel*

put SEP **off** *postpone*

put **on** _____ *pretend*

put _____ **on** *deceive [someone]*

put SEP **on** *dress in [clothing]*

put SEP **on** *add*

put SEP **on** *present [entertainment]*

put SEP **on** *apply [cosmetics]*

put SEP **on** *start [something] playing/working*

put SEP **out** *extinguish*

put SEP **out** *publish, issue*

put **out** _____ *generate a lot of*

put SEP **out** *make unconscious*

put SEP **through** *succeed in doing*

put _____ **through** *pay for [someone's] attendance at*

put SEP **up** *give lodging to*

put SEP **up** *offer*

put SEP **up** *provide*

put SEP **up** *build*

put SEP **up** *nominate*

put **up with** _____
tolerate

put **upon** _____ *take advantage of*

He managed to put across the complexity of the plan.

We put aside the income tax refund for our retirement.

We need to put away the good silverware.

Would you put the ketchup away, please?

Steve can really put away the potato chips.

The government put down a rebellion in the provinces.

It's important to put everything down on paper.

The campaign volunteer put me down as a "maybe."

She put him down in front of all their friends.

You can put 10% down and pay the rest in 90 days.

The daffodils are putting forth their blooms early.

She put forward her plan to save endangered species.

Could you put in a paragraph about offshore drilling?

We put in more shelves for our books.

The defendant put in for a change of venue.

Drake put in for the vacant Senate seat.

Bubba's vulgar language really puts me off.

We'll have to put the meeting off until next week.

Ron put on his fake French accent, and we all laughed.

Don't believe him; he's just putting you on.

Will I need to put my coat on?

Uncle Nelson has put on quite a bit of weight.

The senior class put on a musical.

She puts lipstick on in the morning and after lunch.

We put on some rock music for Dad.

Mom put a pot of coffee on for us.

The campers put the fire out with water from the pond.

They put out 40 titles a year.

The Beatles put "The White Album" out in 1968.

Your laptop puts out a lot of heat.

The anesthesia will put you out, and you won't remember the surgery.

The new CEO put the merger through.

Laurie put herself through law school at Georgetown.

We can put your parents up for one night.

The airline put the stranded passengers up at a hotel.

Our neighbors put their house up for sale.

John put up \$2,000 for the new playground.

They put up a new drugstore in just four months.

They put Renni up for a three-year term.

Martha couldn't put up with the noise anymore.

I don't like to be put upon by my friends.

PRESENT

I quit we quit
 you quit you quit
 he/she/it quits they quit

• *He usually quits around 5 o'clock.*

PAST

I quit we quit
 you quit you quit
 he/she/it quit they quit

• *I quit my job last year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has quit

PAST PERFECT ... had quit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am quitting we are quitting
 you are quitting you are quitting
 he/she/it is quitting they are quitting

• *I am quitting next week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was quitting we were quitting
 you were quitting you were quitting
 he/she/it was quitting they were quitting

• *He was quitting because he needed a full-time job.*

FUTURE ... will quit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be quitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have quit

PAST PASSIVE

Quit is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

quit *stop functioning*

My cell phone just quit.
 The engine quits if you give it too much gas.
 His poor old heart finally quit.

quit *stop working at the end of a work period*

When do they quit for the day?
 I am getting tired. How soon can we quit?
 We can't quit until the next shift comes in.

quit *resign from a job*

That's it. I quit!
 How many people quit in the course of a month?
 We are moving to a new town, so I will have to quit.

quit *admit defeat, give up*

You beat me again. I quit.
 No matter how bad things look, we will never quit.
 They quit before the game was half over.

quit _____ *voluntarily stop doing [a job, school, activity]*

OBJECT

I am going to quit **my job** at the end of the year.
 Tom quit **the police force** and went to law school.
 Mike quit **college** to join the Marines.
 He quit **the team** because he injured his knee.

WH-CLAUSE

You need to quit **what you are doing** and get a better job.
 Quit **whatever you are doing** and listen to this!

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

I have to quit **smoking so much**.
 The company is going to quit **paying overtime**.
 He can't quit **worrying about what is going to happen**.

quit _____ *leave, move away from*

OBJECT

They quit **the suburbs** and moved into the city.

PHRASAL VERBS

quit on _____ *leave one's job without warning [someone]*

The carpenters quit on us in the middle of the renovation.

quit on _____ *stop functioning while [someone] is using it*

The lawn mower quits on me when I get into the tall grass.
 The furnace quit on us again.

read _____ learn from printed/on-screen material

THAT-CLAUSE

I read **that the company may be up for sale**.
The coach read **that we are favored to win**.
We read **that the parade may be cancelled**.

read _____ learn/interpret the meaning of

OBJECT

I couldn't read **her face** at all.
He is very good at reading **people's body language**.
Economists don't always read **inflationary signals** correctly.
Diplomatic experts read **the implications of every government action**.

OBJECT + AS OBJECT

I read **his note as an apology**.
Everyone read **his press release as an announcement of his candidacy**.

read _____ measure and show

OBJECT

The speedometer reads **55 miles per hour**.
The thermometer reads **32 degrees Celsius**.

read _____ state

DIRECT QUOTATION

The sign reads, **"No shirt, no shoes, no service."**

PHRASAL VERBS

read _____ **in/into** infer [additional ideas/messages] from reading

What did you read into Senator Blather's remarks?

read SEP **off** read aloud [a list]

The teacher read off the names of students who had won awards.

read SEP **over/through** read completely

Would you read over my paper before I turn it in?

read up on _____ study/learn by reading

We have to read up on the current drug laws before the conference next week.

EXPRESSIONS

read **between the lines** understand the intended but not explicit meaning of something said/written

She is good at reading between the lines of politicians' speeches.

read **lips** determine the words that someone is saying by watching him/her speak

When talking to someone who reads lips, you should talk normally.

Read **my lips**. Believe what I am about to tell you.

"Read my lips: No new taxes." [PRESIDENT GEORGE H.W. BUSH]

read [someone] **his/her rights** state [someone's] legal rights to [someone who has been arrested]

The arresting officer read the suspect his rights.

read [someone] **like a book** understand [someone] well

His calm manner doesn't fool me; I can read him like a book.

read [someone] **the riot act** scold severely

When Ed came home late, his father read him the riot act.

read [someone's] **mind/thoughts** understand what [someone] is thinking

How did you know I wanted pizza for dinner?
You must have read my mind.

PRESENT

I read we read
 you read you read
 he/she/it reads they read
 • *He never reads his e-mail.*

PAST

I read we read
 you read you read
 he/she/it read they read
 • *She read nothing but short stories.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has read

PAST PERFECT ... had read

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am reading we are reading
 you are reading you are reading
 he/she/it is reading they are reading
 • *Be quiet! I'm reading.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was reading we were reading
 you were reading you were reading
 he/she/it was reading they were reading
 • *I was just reading your note.*

FUTURE ... will read

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be reading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have read

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was read they were read
 • *The transcript was read aloud in court.*

NOTE: The present form of *read* rhymes with *seed*; the past forms of *read* rhyme with *bed*.

COMPLEMENTS

read *understand writing/printing*

read *look at and understand the content of printed material*

read ____ *speak [written/printed/on-screen words] aloud*

ADVERB OF MANNER

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

to PARAPHRASE

PASSIVE

read ____ *decode and get information from [a set of letters/numbers/symbols]*

OBJECT

read ____ *look at and understand the content of [written/printed/on-screen material]*

OBJECT

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

Can any of the children read yet?

I love to read.

I always read on the airplane.

She reads **beautifully**.
 DJ reads **with a different voice for each character**.

He reads **too softly for everyone to hear**.

Thank you. You read **that** beautifully.

Paul read **the memo** in a perfect imitation of the boss's voice.

Can you read **me a story**?

The teacher reads **the class a book** for the last 15 minutes.

Can you read **a story to me**?

The teacher reads **a book to the class** for the last 15 minutes.

We were read a story every night.

I can't read **her handwriting**.

He taught himself to read **Old Icelandic**.

The gas man came to read **the meter** this morning.

Yvonne can't read **music**, but she plays beautifully.

Will my computer be able to read **this file**?

I read **the newspaper** every morning at breakfast.

He read **your e-mail** and will get back to you.

Julius Caesar was read in every tenth-grade classroom.

I read **what you said about me**.

You need to read **what is in the fine print** very carefully.

He will read **whatever he can get his hands on**.



PRESENT

I rend	we rend
you rend	you rend
he/she/it rends	they rend

• *It rends my heart to see her so unhappy.*

PAST

I rent	we rent
you rent	you rent
he/she/it rent	they rent

• *The howling of wolves rent the night air.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rent

PAST PERFECT ... had rent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rendering	we are rendering
you are rendering	you are rendering
he/she/it is rendering	they are rendering

• *We are rendering cotton rags to make paper.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rendering	we were rendering
you were rendering	you were rendering
he/she/it was rendering	they were rendering

• *The grieving mourners were rendering their clothes.*

FUTURE ... will rend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rendering

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rent

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was rent	they were rent

• *The quiet was rent by a loud explosion.*

COMPLEMENTS

rend _____ tear/split forcefully into pieces

OBJECT

The trap cruelly rent **the animal's skin**.The dryer had rent **the delicate fabrics** to shreds.Carnivores' teeth are designed to rend **their prey**.

PASSIVE

The drapes were rent from top to bottom.

rend _____ disturb/pierce with sound

OBJECT

The wolves' howling rent **the night**.

PASSIVE

The night was rent by the wolves' howling.

rend _____ distress, cause pain to

OBJECT

Suspicion and doubt rent **their relationship**.

PASSIVE

Her heart was rent by the dreadful sight.

PRESENT

I rid we rid
 you rid you rid
 he/she/it rids they rid

• *The cat rids the barn of mice.*

PAST

I rid we rid
 you rid you rid
 he/she/it rid they rid

• *They rid themselves of all their coats.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rid

PAST PERFECT ... had rid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ridding we are ridding
 you are ridding you are ridding
 he/she/it is ridding they are ridding

• *The store is ridding itself of unsold merchandise.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ridding we were ridding
 you were ridding you were ridding
 he/she/it was ridding they were ridding

• *I was ridding myself of all my junk.*

FUTURE ... will rid

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be ridding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have rid

PAST PASSIVE

I was rid we were rid
 you were rid you were rid
 he/she/it was rid they were rid

• *We were finally rid of unwanted visitors.*

COMPLEMENTS

rid _____ free from [someone/something not wanted]

OBJECT + of OBJECT

They hoped to rid **the world of nuclear weapons.**

I can't rid **myself of this miserable cold.**

You must rid **yourself of all debt.**

They were trying to rid **the field of all noxious weeds.**

The alderman wants to rid **the city of one-way streets.**

The sheriff is trying to rid **the county of drug dealers.**

"Will no one rid **me of this troublesome priest?**" [HENRY II,

LEADING TO THE MURDER OF THOMAS BECKET IN 1170]

PASSIVE

The tent was rid **of all mosquitoes.**

PRESENT

I ride we ride
 you ride you ride
 he/she/it rides they ride

• *He rides the bus to work every day.*

PAST

I rode we rode
 you rode you rode
 he/she/it rode they rode

• *I rode my bicycle to the store yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has ridden

PAST PERFECT ... had ridden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am riding we are riding
 you are riding you are riding
 he/she/it is riding they are riding

• *Our hopes are riding on the new government.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was riding we were riding
 you were riding you were riding
 he/she/it was riding they were riding

• *He was riding in the first race.*

FUTURE

... will ride

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be riding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have ridden

PAST PASSIVE

—

—

it was ridden

they were ridden

• *That horse was last ridden a week ago.*

COMPLEMENTS

ride sit on a horse/bicycle/motorcycle/
 etc. and make it move along

Do you know how to ride?
 She rides quite well.
 You never forget how to ride.
 The cowboys rode 70 miles the first day.

ride move along in a vehicle

He never rides when he can walk.
 I rode to work that day.
 They rode in a school bus to the meeting.

ride _____ sit on and make move along

OBJECT

The kids were riding **their bicycles** in the park.
 We rented horses and rode **them** all afternoon.

ride _____ move along in/on

OBJECT

We rode **the train** when we were in Germany.
 I usually ride **the bus** to work.
 They rode **every ride** at Disneyland.

ride _____ be carried along on/by

OBJECT

The surfers were riding **the waves**.
 Investors rode **the boom in housing** for 20 years.
 The TV networks were still riding **the fad of reality TV**.

ride _____ tease, nag

OBJECT

The girls are constantly riding **each other** about music.
 I had better get back to work. The boss is really riding **us**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ride away/down/off/out/up/etc.
 move along in a specified direction

Marvin stopped by to talk, then rode off.
 We rode out to the ferry landing this morning.

ride on _____ depend on

The company's reputation is riding on these negotiations.
 All his hopes are riding on being promoted to news anchor.

ride SEP **out** survive in safety

We rode out the storm in the basement.
 Can our company ride out these perilous economic times?

ride up move upward out of place

His jeans rode up as he jogged across the parking lot.

PRESENT

I ring we ring
 you ring you ring
 he/she/it rings they ring

• *The bell rings on the quarter hour.*

PAST

I rang we rang
 you rang you rang
 he/she/it rang they rang

• *The phone rang as I was doing dishes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has rung

PAST PERFECT ... had rung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am ringing we are ringing
 you are ringing you are ringing
 he/she/it is ringing they are ringing

• *Your alarm clock is ringing.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was ringing we were ringing
 you were ringing you were ringing
 he/she/it was ringing they were ringing

• *The phone was ringing all morning.*

FUTURE

... will ring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be ringing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have rung

PAST PASSIVE

I was rung we were rung
 you were rung you were rung
 he/she/it was rung they were rung

• *The church bell was rung every Sunday for years.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *ring* is presented here. The regular verb *ring* (*ring* | *rings* · *ringed* · *have ringed*) means “surround, form a circle around,” as in *Cypress trees ring the lake*.

COMPLEMENTS

ring *make the sound of a bell*

All of the church bells were ringing.
 Good wine glasses will ring if you tap them.

ring *call for service by telephone/bell*

If you need help, just ring.
 We rang, but nobody came.
 Please ring for service.

ring *fill a place with sound*

The sound of cannons rang through the air.

ring *be filled with sound*

The halls rang with laughter as the students left for the holiday.
 After the explosion, my ears rang for half an hour.

ring _____ *cause [a bell/alarm] to sound*

OBJECT

I knocked and rang **the doorbell**.
 It takes a lot of practice to ring **the big church bells**.
 The bells are always rung on Easter.

PASSIVE

ring _____ *seem to be*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The immigrant’s story rings **true**.
 Harry’s apology rang **hollow**.

PHRASAL VERBS

ring out *sound clearly and loudly*

Three shots rang out in the crisp
 autumn air.

ring ^{SEP} **up** *record the price of [something] on a cash register*

The cashier rang up the cauliflower at \$1.99 a head.

EXPRESSIONS

ring a bell *seem familiar*

You’re right—that name rings a bell.

ring in the new (year), ring out the old *celebrate the beginning of the new year*

We ring in the new year by watching the ball drop
 at New York’s Times Square.

ring off the hook *ring constantly*

I got nothing done this morning—the phone was ringing
 off the hook.

PRESENT

I rise we rise
 you rise you rise
 he/she/it rises they rise

• *The land slowly rises toward the hills.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am rising we are rising
 you are rising you are rising
 he/she/it is rising they are rising

• *His temperature is still rising.*

PAST

I rose we rose
 you rose you rose
 he/she/it rose they rose

• *The river rose until the banks overflowed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was rising we were rising
 you were rising you were rising
 he/she/it was rising they were rising

• *Prices were steadily rising.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has risen

PAST PERFECT ... had risen

FUTURE ... will rise

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be rising

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have risen

PAST PASSIVE

Risen is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

rise *go to a higher level*

The tide will be rising until four.
 The moon was just rising above the trees.
 A loud cheer rose from the spectators.
 White smoke was rising from the chimney.
 The Beatles rose to fame overnight.
 Carly rose to be CEO of a Fortune 500 company.
 He rose from office boy to company director.

rise *stand/get up*

All rise! [COMMAND ISSUED WHEN A JUDGE ENTERS
 A COURTROOM]
 He rose from the couch and turned off the TV.
 We usually rise before dawn.

rise *become greater/higher/stronger*

As we start going downhill, our speed will rise rapidly.
 The Roman Empire rose and fell.
 Stock prices rose two percent today.
 My income has not risen as much as inflation has.
 During the concert, the noise rose to unbearable levels.
 The hills steadily rose as we drove northward.
 The bread dough was rising quickly.
 His voice rose to a pitiful squeak.
 Gas prices have been rising lately.
 The wind rose to near gale force.

PHRASAL VERBS

rise above _____ *ignore [a bad situation]*

The legislators rose above their petty disagreements and passed an excellent bill.

rise up (against _____) *rebel/revolt (against [someone/something])*

The colonists rose up against George III and his army.

EXPRESSIONS

rise and shine *get out of bed and be energetic*

Rise and shine! We've got a big day ahead of us.

rise to the occasion *succeed in dealing with a difficult situation*

The president rose to the occasion and delivered a forceful, inspiring speech.

PRESENT

I run we run
 you run you run
 he/she/it runs they run

• *The road runs west to the river.*

PAST

I ran we ran
 you ran you ran
 he/she/it ran they ran

• *The children ran through the door.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has run

PAST PERFECT ... had run

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am running we are running
 you are running you are running
 he/she/it is running they are running

• *He is running in the Boston Marathon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was running we were running
 you were running you were running
 he/she/it was running they were running

• *The program was running a little late.*

FUTURE ... will run

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be running

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have run

PAST PASSIVE

I was run we were run
 you were run you were run
 he/she/it was run they were run

• *The store was run by Harry and his children.*

COMPLEMENTS

run go by moving one's legs faster than in walking

The kids never stop running.
 I try to run two miles every day.
 The tiger has escaped! Run!

run flow [OF LIQUIDS]

The Missouri River runs into the Mississippi River at St. Louis.
 The paint was too thin. It ran down the wall in streaks.

run spread, move freely

A murmur ran through the crowd.
 A light breeze ran through the tall grass.

run operate, be in use/action

The train runs three times a day.
 The engine is not running very smoothly.
 The network servers are not running.

run _____ operate

OBJECT

Do you know how to run **this printing press**?
 She can run **any equipment in the woodworking shop**.

run _____ manage

OBJECT

He runs **the local supermarket**.
 The church runs **a preschool program**.

run _____ go

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I need to run **to the bank**.
 We've got to run **home** for something.
 The ferry runs **from Modoc to Ste. Genevieve and back**.

run _____ transport

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Can you run **me back to the office**?
 I will run **you over to the station**.

run _____ continue, extend

ADVERB OF TIME

The festival runs **for four weeks in June**.
 The fiscal year runs **from July 1 to June 30**.
 The literature class runs **every quarter**.
 This path runs **up the bluff to Deer Pond**.

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

run _____ cause to continue/extend

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We ran **electrical conduit under the floor**.
 The logging company ran **a gravel road out to the camp**.



run _____ perform

OBJECT

Can you run **some errands** for me?
The doctor will need to run **some tests**.

run _____ cost [INFORMAL]

(INDIRECT OBJECT +) DIRECT OBJECT

The shipping will run **\$8.95**.
The trip will run **you about \$500**.

run _____ publish

OBJECT

The newspaper ran **several articles on homeless people**.
Our company ran **an ad** in the July issue.

run _____ be [at a certain level]

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

The store is running **low** on toilet paper.
We ran **late** getting to the theater.

PHRASAL VERBS

run across _____ come upon by chance

We ran across our cousins at the farmers' market.
We ran across old photos of Great-grandfather.

run against _____ be a candidate
opposing

Senator Blather ran against gun control.
She ran against another alderman in the primary.

run along go away

Why don't you kids run along? Be back here in two hours.

run (around) with _____ socialize with

Tara runs around with her friends from high school.

run _____ by/past seek advice about /
approval for [something] from

Sam ran the speech by Toby.

run SEP down drain all the power from

Stop trying to start the car; you'll run the battery down.

run SEP down criticize

Brandi ran down the rest of the group.

run for _____ be a candidate for

The governor is running for a fourth term.

run _____ for support [someone] as a
candidate for

The party ran an unknown businessman for mayor.

run into _____ collide with

My sister ran into a deer on the highway.

run into _____ meet by chance

Janey ran into Hulga at the grocery store.

run SEP off print, make copies of

I ran off several extra sets for you.

run on _____ use for power

Our hybrid car runs on gasoline and an NiMH battery.

run on continue without stopping

The presentation of awards ran on forever.

run out come to an end, be used up

Time is running out, and I still have an essay to write.

run out of _____ use up

Our supply of helium ran out—no more balloons!

Mom finally ran out of patience with us kids.

They ran out of popcorn before the second show.

run over overflow

Quick! The bathtub is running over.

run over _____ knock down while driving

Her friend ran over a skunk.

run over _____ exceed a limit

The class was supposed to last an hour, but it ran over.

run SEP over bring [something]

Would you run the latest proposal over to my office?

run through _____ use up

Shane ran through his inheritance in a year.

run to _____ amount to

The grocery bill runs to \$123.44.

Homer's *Odyssey* runs to more than 12,000 lines.

George ran up a sizable tab at the luxury hotel.

run SEP up
accumulate [debt]

Technology gains ran stock prices up.

run SEP up
cause to increase

The Cobras ran up a big lead, then benched their starters.

run up against
_____ encounter

He finally ran up against a problem he couldn't solve.

top
30
verb

- REGULAR
- IRREGULAR

saw | saws · sawed · have sawed
 saw | saws · sawed · have sawn

saw

113

PRESENT

I saw we saw
 you saw you saw
 he/she/it saws they saw

• *He saws plywood with a special blade.*

PAST

I sawed we sawed
 you sawed you sawed
 he/she/it sawed they sawed

• *I sawed the board in half.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sawn

PAST PERFECT ... had sawn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sawing we are sawing
 you are sawing you are sawing
 he/she/it is sawing they are sawing

• *I am sawing fence posts.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sawing we were sawing
 you were sawing you were sawing
 he/she/it was sawing they were sawing

• *He was sawing as fast as he could.*

FUTURE

... will saw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be sawing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have sawn

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was sawn they were sawn

• *The beams were sawn nearly through.*

COMPLEMENTS

saw cut using a saw

We have been sawing all afternoon.

I will have to saw at an angle.

Look out for nails when you saw.

The new blade saws smoothly.

saw be cut using a saw

These pine two-by-fours saw very easily.

saw use a sawing motion

Holmes was sawing on his violin.

When he jumped off the cliff, his arms sawed up and down.

saw _____ cut/shape using a saw
 OBJECT

We are sawing **oak planks** for flooring.

I will saw **the sheets of fiberglass** with a special blade.

John sawed **the boards** into two-foot lengths.

They have sawn **a lot of timber** this week.

We were sawing **jigsaw puzzles** out of masonite.

The lumber had been sawn against the grain.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

saw at _____ cut back and forth
 using a knife/bar/etc.

The prisoner was sawing at the window
 bars with a table knife.

saw SEP **down** cut down

The lumberjacks sawed the entire woods down.

saw SEP **off** cut off

She sawed off the branches that she could reach.

saw SEP **up** cut into pieces

Gerry sawed the board up into seven pieces of equal length.

PRESENT

I say we say
 you say you say
 he/she/it says they say
 • *He always says that he is too busy.*

PAST

I said we said
 you said you said
 he/she/it said they said
 • *She said something I couldn't understand.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has said

PAST PERFECT ... had said

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am saying we are saying
 you are saying you are saying
 he/she/it is saying they are saying
 • *I am not saying anything.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was saying we were saying
 you were saying you were saying
 he/she/it was saying they were saying
 • *We were saying that it wouldn't be a problem.*

FUTURE ... will say

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be saying

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have said

PAST PASSIVE

I was said we were said
 you were said you were said
 he/she/it was said they were said
 • *They were said to be in the oil business.*

COMPLEMENTS

say _____ speak, put into words, express

OBJECT

The teacher said **“hello” in Latin.**They said **nothing about it.**Would you say **your name** again, slowly?

PASSIVE

His name was said, but I didn't catch it.

INFINITIVE

He said **to go ahead without him.**The tour guide says **to be back on the bus in 15 minutes.**The recipe said **to use only the egg whites.**Her note said **to leave the back door unlocked.**

THAT-CLAUSE

They said **that they would come back later.**The law says **that everyone is presumed to be innocent.**He said **that we should expect snow.**

WH-CLAUSE

He never said **what he meant to do about the problem.**Did he say **when they were coming?**

WH-INFINITIVE

The instructions say **how to attach the handlebars.**

DIRECT QUOTATION

“Good morning,” she said. **“We're glad you're here.”**

say _____ show, indicate

OBJECT

The clock says **2:15.**His expression said **it all.**

(to OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

The tone of his voice says **that he's disappointed.**My instinct says **to me that we should really be cautious.**

WH-CLAUSE

Their veto says **what they think about the proposal.**

be said _____ be commonly reported [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

INFINITIVE

She was said to be one of the best lawyers around.

He is said to take forever to make up his mind.

EXPRESSIONS

have _____ to say for yourself be able to say in one's favor/defense

say the word give a signal

say yes/no (to _____) agree/disagree (with [someone/something])

The defendant had nothing to say for himself.

What do you have to say for yourself, young man?

When I say the word, jump out and shout **“Happy Birthday!”**

Sarah said yes to Lucas when he proposed to her.

Just say no to drugs.

PRESENT

I see we see
 you see you see
 he/she/it sees they see

• *He sees a physical therapist once a week.*

PAST

I saw we saw
 you saw you saw
 he/she/it saw they saw

• *I saw Marian yesterday.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has seen

PAST PERFECT ... had seen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeing we are seeing
 you are seeing you are seeing
 he/she/it is seeing they are seeing

• *I am seeing them at 10 o'clock.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeing we were seeing
 you were seeing you were seeing
 he/she/it was seeing they were seeing

• *We were seeing some friends last night.*

FUTURE ... will see

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be seeing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have seen

PAST PASSIVE

I was seen we were seen
 you were seen you were seen
 he/she/it was seen they were seen

• *The suspect was last seen fleeing the crime scene.*

COMPLEMENTS

see use the sense of sight

see understand [something previously said]

see acknowledge [something previously said]

see _____ observe with one's eyes

OBJECT

PASSIVE

OBJECT + BASE-FORM INFINITIVE

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

PASSIVE

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

THAT-CLAUSE

EMPHATIC PARAPHRASE

WH-CLAUSE

see _____ understand

OBJECT

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

[USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

THAT-CLAUSE

WH-CLAUSE

Ray can't see anymore.

You won't be able to see temporarily.

Oh, I see! [USUALLY SPOKEN EMPHATICALLY]

I see. [USUALLY SPOKEN IN A LEVEL OR FALLING TONE]

I saw **Tom** at the grocery store.

We saw **the documentary** on TV last night.

What do you see?

The star is best seen through a high-powered telescope.

Sam saw **the wind rip the roof off the house**.

Nobody saw **the suspect break into the house**.

We saw **Charles walking to school**.

I'm sorry. I didn't see **you standing there**.

Mary was seen **talking to Brett**.

Someone must have seen **the car stolen**.

We saw **the bridge swept away in the flood**.

I see **that you bought a new car**.

We saw in the paper **that your son is getting married**.

You bought a new car, I see.

I saw **what they are making for dinner**.

Did anybody see **where the kids went**?

I see **your point**.

We all see **the attractions of living in a big city**.

Nobody saw **the magnitude of the risk**.

He is widely seen **to be qualified**.

The judge was seen **to favor the prosecution**.

I see **that we are in big trouble**.

Our lawyer saw **that they were on shaky legal ground**.

I see **what we should do**.

No one saw **how risky the plan was**.



see _____ meet with, visit

OBJECT

I will see **the reporters** at 2 o'clock.

Guess **whom** I saw today?

Would you stop by and see **Aunt Tillie**?

You will be seen by the next available doctor.

PASSIVE

see _____ seek advice/information/help from

OBJECT

You should see **a doctor** about that rash.

Steve saw **a cancer specialist** today.

Alexander is seeing **his thesis advisor** on Tuesday.

see _____ find out

WH-CLAUSE

See **who's at the door**, please.

Kari will see **what the congressman wants**.

see _____ have a romantic relationship with [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]

OBJECT

Paul is seeing **a friend of mine**.

She is finally seeing **someone that we all like**.

Are you seeing **anyone**?

see _____ accompany

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Louise saw **her guests to the door**.

Jake saw **Mallory home from the party**.

see _____ consider

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE NOUN

They saw **Laura as a threat**.

I see **this as a golden opportunity**.

OBJECT + AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

We see **her as inexperienced and unreliable**.

The manager saw **his staff as eager and energetic**.

Traders will see **the economic picture as unstable**.

see _____ make sure

(to it) THAT-CLAUSE

See **(to it) that the lights are turned off before you leave**.

We asked the janitor to see **(to it) that the boxes are**

removed from the hallway.

see _____ experience

OBJECT

My hometown has seen **lots of changes**.

The price of milk has seen **a large increase**.

PHRASAL VERBS

see _____ **back/down/in/out/up/etc.**
accompany in a specified direction

May I see you **back to your office**?

The receptionist will see you **out**.

see **about** _____ take care of

My secretary will see **about** ordering new carpet.

see **in** look inside

The neighbors can see **in** if the drapes are open.

see _____ **off** accompany [to a place
of departure]

I'll see you **off** at the train station.

see **out** look outside

The windows were **papered over** so we couldn't see **out**.

see **through** look through something

The windshield is so dirty I can't see **through**.

see **through** _____ understand the
deception in

His wife finally saw **through** all his lies.

see SEP **through**
bring to completion

Glenda saw the project **through**.

see SEP **through**
help in a difficult time

An extra \$100 a week will see us **through**.

see **to** _____
take care of

Would you see **to** the lizard in the kitchen?

top
30
verb

PRESENT

I seek we seek
 you seek you seek
 he/she/it seeks they seek
 • *France seeks to establish trade relations.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am seeking we are seeking
 you are seeking you are seeking
 he/she/it is seeking they are seeking
 • *We are only seeking the truth.*

PAST

I sought we sought
 you sought you sought
 he/she/it sought they sought
 • *The hikers sought a safe place to camp.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was seeking we were seeking
 you were seeking you were seeking
 he/she/it was seeking they were seeking
 • *The birds were seeking suitable nesting places.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sought

PAST PERFECT ... had sought

FUTURE ... will seek

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be seeking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sought

PAST PASSIVE

I was sought we were sought
 you were sought you were sought
 he/she/it was sought they were sought
 • *Voting rights were sought by women's groups for decades.*

COMPLEMENTS

seek _____ look for

OBJECT

Ruby was seeking a **good place for the family reunion**.
 Seek **shelter** immediately when you hear the tornado siren.
 We sought **anybody who could answer our questions**.
 A suspect in the killing is being sought by the police.

PASSIVE

seek _____ ask for

OBJECT

You need to seek **professional advice**.
 I am seeking **information about cell phones**.
 We should seek **help on this problem**.
 Technical information on wind farms is being sought.

PASSIVE

seek _____ try, attempt

INFINITIVE

We sought **to find a better solution to the problem**.
 They are seeking **to replace their old computers**.
 We never sought **to cause any problems**.
 The company has always sought **to have excellent customer relations**.

seek _____ try to get/achieve

OBJECT

The plaintiff is seeking **damages of \$2 million**.
 He sought **revenge for his brother's murder**.
 She sought **perfection in everything she did**.

PHRASAL VERBS

seek SEP out look for and find

The candidate sought out the best pollsters in the country.

EXPRESSIONS

Seek and ye shall find. *If you look hard enough for something, you will find it.* [BIBLE]

The farmers' market has every kind of vegetable and fruit you can think of. Just seek and ye shall find.

PRESENT

I sell we sell
 you sell you sell
 he/she/it sells they sell

• *Our store sells sports equipment.*

PAST

I sold we sold
 you sold you sold
 he/she/it sold they sold

• *We sold the desk on craigslist.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sold

PAST PERFECT ... had sold

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am selling we are selling
 you are selling you are selling
 he/she/it is selling they are selling

• *These gadgets are selling like crazy.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was selling we were selling
 you were selling you were selling
 he/she/it was selling they were selling

• *We were selling children's clothing at half price.*

FUTURE

... will sell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be selling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sold

PAST PASSIVE

I was sold we were sold
 you were sold you were sold
 he/she/it was sold they were sold

• *That house was sold last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

sell *be a successful product/idea*

I think that his new CD will really sell.
 His proposal will never sell.

sell _____ *exchange for money*

OBJECT

I want to sell **my old computer**.
 He finally sold **his jewelry business**.
 Should we sell **the rocking chair** or give it away?
 She sold **the lamp for \$10**.

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT

How much did you sell **the table for**?

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

We sold **them some lawn furniture**.
 Jay sold **the dealer his coin collection**.

TO PARAPHRASE

We sold **some lawn furniture to them**.
 Jay sold **his coin collection to the dealer**.

OBJECT + *WH*-CLAUSE

He sold **us just what we had in mind**.
 We sell **people whatever kind of car they want**.

sell _____ *be given in exchange [for money]*

for OBJECT

The Picasso painting sold **for \$104 million**.
 The antique rolling pin sold **for \$25**.

sell _____ *offer for purchase*

OBJECT

The hardware store sells **electrical and plumbing supplies**.
 Our group is selling **raffle tickets**.
 They sell **fish sandwiches** on Friday.
 Gym memberships are sold by the month.
 The boutique is selling **scarves for as little as \$7**.

PASSIVE

OBJECT + *for* OBJECT

sell _____ *be offered for purchase*

for OBJECT

Milk is selling **for \$3.50 a gallon**.

sell _____ *successfully promote*

OBJECT

John really knows how to sell **his vision for the company**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sell *SEP* off *liquidate*

We sold off our clothing division two years ago.

sell out of _____ *sell all of*

We sold out of French Roast coffee yesterday.
 We are sold out of chocolate ice cream.

PRESENT

I send we send
 you send you send
 he/she/it sends they send

• *The firm sends letters by registered mail.*

PAST

I sent we sent
 you sent you sent
 he/she/it sent they sent

• *They sent us a nice note.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sent

PAST PERFECT ... had sent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sending we are sending
 you are sending you are sending
 he/she/it is sending they are sending

• *I am sending you an e-mail.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sending we were sending
 you were sending you were sending
 he/she/it was sending they were sending

• *She was sending her children to a private school.*

FUTURE ... will send

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sent

PAST PASSIVE

I was sent we were sent
 you were sent you were sent
 he/she/it was sent they were sent

• *The letter was sent to the wrong address.*

COMPLEMENTS

send _____ mail, dispatch

OBJECT

send _____ cause to go / be carried

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

TO PARAPHRASE

They forgot to send **the letter**.

We will send **a car** to pick them up.

We sent **our luggage on ahead**.

I sent **the children to bed** early.

The wizard sent **Dorothy back to Kansas**.

The accident sent **a cloud of dust into the air**.

The package was sent **to the wrong office**.

Send **me your ideas**.

We sent **them a wedding present**.

Send **your ideas to me**.

We sent **a wedding present to them**.

PHRASAL VERBS

send SEP away/back/by/down/in/out/over/etc. cause to go in a specified direction

send (away/back/down/off/out/up)

for _____ summon, request

send SEP in submit

send _____ in for put [someone] into a contest as a replacement for

send SEP off mail

send SEP off cause to go away

send SEP off say farewell to [someone leaving on a trip]

send SEP out issue, distribute

send _____ out for cause [someone] to go on an errand to get

send SEP up/down cause to go up/down

The publisher sent my manuscript back unread.

You may send the ambassador in now.

Send for the school nurse immediately.

Abby sent away for extra copies of the report.

Let's send out for pizza.

Please send your application in by December 31.

The coach sent Hopkins in for Busam.

We sent off a present to our granddaughter.

Send the children off so that we can talk privately.

The town sent the soldiers off with a parade.

The company sent a press release out this morning.

I sent Billie out for some more ice cream.

Good economic news sent the stock market up.

PHRASAL VERBS

set SEP **aside/down/forward/out/up/etc.** put in a specified position

set **about** _____ begin

set _____ **against** cause to disagree with

set _____ **apart** make distinctive

set SEP **aside** keep apart

set SEP **aside** reject, nullify

set SEP **back** delay

set SEP **back** cost [someone] [INFORMAL]

set SEP **down** put in writing

set _____ **down to** blame [something] on

set SEP **forth** announce, make known

set **in** begin

set **off/out** depart, start out

set SEP **off** make distinctive

set SEP **off** cause to be very emotional

set SEP **off** trigger, cause to make a noise

set SEP **off** cause to explode

set **on/upon** _____ attack

set SEP **out** display

set SEP **out** plant

set **to** _____ begin

set _____ **to** order to

set SEP **up** arrange

set SEP **up** build, erect

set SEP **up** found, establish

set SEP **up** raise to power / a higher position / etc.

set SEP **up** prepare for use

set SEP **up** make [someone] the target of a joke/deception

set SEP **up with** arrange a date for [someone] with

The logician set the problem aside and went to lunch.

Our neighbors set scraps out for our dog.

The Scouts set about repairing the holes in the tent.

His budget policies set the president against Congress.

His honesty and sense of justice set him apart.

We set aside \$200 a month for the kids' education.

They set their differences aside and became close friends.

Congress set the issue aside for the time being.

The Supreme Court set aside the appellate court ruling.

The bad economy will set back our plans to expand.

The president's order set genetic research back six years.

How much did the new lawn tractor set you back?

The secretary has set down what was said at the executive meeting.

The boss set Hank's mistake down to inexperience and naiveté.

The church set forth its principles of equality and inclusion.

Decay has already set in.

With all the political commercials on TV, voter fatigue has set in.

Three hundred pioneers set off from St. Joseph, Missouri. Refugees set out in overcrowded boats for the mainland.

The designer set the title off from the text below.

Be careful not to set Dolores off; she's already angry.

My son set the metal detector off with his belt buckle.

Quarrymen set off 150 pounds of dynamite.

The citizens set upon the soldiers and beat them badly.

The store sets out its Christmas items right after Halloween.

Don't set your tomatoes out before the last frost.

Farmers set to plugging the hole in the dike.

Engineers set to work on the project.

My parents set me to vacuuming the dining room.

Let's set a meeting up with the committee chairpersons.

Gerry set up a miniature railroad in the living room.

Our group set up a web-based discussion forum.

Adolf Hitler set himself up as dictator.

She set her mom's computer up to do e-mail.

They set me up on April Fool's Day, and I fell for it.

Would you set me up with your roommate?

PRESENT

I set we set
 you set you set
 he/she/it sets they set

• *The auctioneer sets a minimum bid.*

PAST

I set we set
 you set you set
 he/she/it set they set

• *I set my chair next to the window.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has set

PAST PERFECT ... had set

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am setting we are setting
 you are setting you are setting
 he/she/it is setting they are setting

• *I am setting the alarm for 6 A.M.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was setting we were setting
 you were setting you were setting
 he/she/it was setting they were setting

• *We were setting a new direction for the company.*

FUTURE ... will set

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be setting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have set

PAST PASSIVE

I was set we were set
 you were set you were set
 he/she/it was set they were set

• *The couch was set in front of the TV screen.*

COMPLEMENTS

set sink below the horizon

The sun will set at 6:43 tonight.
 The moon was just setting below the trees in the west.
 Orion was setting behind the snowy hills.

set become solid/rigid

The chocolate mousse never set properly.
 The cement in the patio was setting nicely.
 Be careful. The glue sets in just a few seconds.

set _____ put, lay

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The hunters set **their guns against the fence**.
 I set **my foot on the bottom rung of the ladder**.
 She set **the novel in postwar Canada**.

PASSIVE

The house was set **well back from the road**.
 The movie was set **in Los Angeles**.
 The album had been set **on a shelf in the living room**.

set _____ arrange, adjust

OBJECT

The doctor set **my dislocated shoulder**.
 I have set **the clock** for daylight saving time.
 I set **the volume on the radio** way too high.
 Last winter, we set **the thermostat** at 62 degrees.
 His face was set in a permanent scowl.

PASSIVE

set _____ establish, fix

OBJECT

The track team set **a record for the 400-meter relay**.
 The Hunt brothers tried to set **the price of silver**.
 Sarah and Lucas have set **the date of their wedding**.
 Graham sets **a good example for the other children**.
 The real estate agent set **the price of our house** at \$235,000.
 We set **a fund-raising goal of \$200**.

set _____ cause to be in a certain state/condition

OBJECT + PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

Lincoln set **the slaves free**.
 Grandpa always set **the dogs loose** after breakfast.

OBJECT + TO PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The speech set **us to thinking about harnessing the sun's energy**.



PRESENT

I sew	we sew
you sew	you sew
he/she/it sews	they sew

• *We sew only sports jerseys here.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sewing	we are sewing
you are sewing	you are sewing
he/she/it is sewing	they are sewing

• *He is sewing his own Halloween costume.*

PAST

I sewed	we sewed
you sewed	you sewed
he/she/it sewed	they sewed

• *You sewed the pocket on upside down!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sewing	we were sewing
you were sewing	you were sewing
he/she/it was sewing	they were sewing

• *I was sewing a baby blanket for charity.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sewn

PAST PERFECT ... had sewn

FUTURE ... will sew

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sewing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sewn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sewn	they were sewn

• *All clothes by this company were sewn in the United States.*

COMPLEMENTS

sew *stitch together a garment, etc.*

Don't bother Mom—she's sewing.
Aunt Rosie sews in her spare time.

sew _____ *stitch together, fasten with stitches*

OBJECT

The seamstress can sew **a jacket** in a single day.
Our neighbor sews **quilts** for a living.

PASSIVE

The costumes have already been sewn for the play.

OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE

An assistant will sew **the incision closed**.

PASSIVE

The pockets were sewn **shut**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

My sister is sewing **me a pair of pajamas**.
Birds sewed **Cinderella a gown to wear to the ball**.

for PARAPHRASE

My sister is sewing **a pair of pajamas for me**.
Birds sewed **a gown for Cinderella to wear to the ball**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sew SEP on *attach with stitches*

Will you please sew this button on?
I sewed the merit badges on for you.

sew SEP up *stitch together*

The intern sewed the surgical patient up.

sew SEP up *conclude [a deal, a discussion]*

Players sewed contract talks up with owners on Friday.
We can sew up the entire deal by noon.

PRESENT

I shake we shake
 you shake you shake
 he/she/it shakes they shake
 • *The windows shake when it's windy.*

PAST

I shook we shook
 you shook you shook
 he/she/it shook they shook
 • *I shook the umbrella before I closed it.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shaken

PAST PERFECT ... had shaken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaking we are shaking
 you are shaking you are shaking
 he/she/it is shaking they are shaking
 • *My hands are shaking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaking we were shaking
 you were shaking you were shaking
 he/she/it was shaking they were shaking
 • *He was shaking his head in disbelief.*

FUTURE ... will shake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shaken

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaken we were shaken
 you were shaken you were shaken
 he/she/it was shaken they were shaken
 • *Everyone was badly shaken by the earthquake.*

COMPLEMENTS

shake tremble, vibrate

His voice shakes whenever he gets excited.
 The floor shakes whenever a train goes by.
 My legs were beginning to shake from the strain of lifting the box.

shake _____ cause to move quickly up and down / back and forth / from side to side

OBJECT

The cat is shaking **its toy mouse** furiously.
 I shook **David** by the shoulder to wake him up.
 I shook **my head** vigorously, trying to get him to stop talking.
 We shook **the rugs** and put them back on the floor.
 They shook **hands** and smiled for the camera.
 Shake **the dressing** well before using.

shake _____ shock, surprise, upset

OBJECT

The news about the accident shook **us all** badly.
 The sudden increase in oil prices shook **the financial markets**.
 Her daughter's death shook **her religious faith**.

PASSIVE

She was visibly shaken when she returned.

PHRASAL VERBS

shake SEP **down/off/out/up/etc.** cause to move quickly in a specified direction

The gardener shook the apples down.
 Tip Top stood up and shook the dust off.

shake SEP **down** get money from by using threats

The politician shook down corporations for campaign contributions.

shake SEP **off** get away from

The car thief was unable to shake the police off.

shake SEP **off** get rid of

It took me a week to shake off a cold.

shake SEP **out** clean by shaking

We put fresh sheets on the bed and shook out the blankets.

shake SEP **out** straighten by shaking

Lydia shook the shirts out before hanging them up.

shake SEP **up** mix by shaking

I shook the salad dressing up before opening the bottle.

shake SEP **up** change greatly

The new department head shook up the staff with a round of hiring and firing.

PRESENT

I shave we shave
 you shave you shave
 he/she/it shaves they shave

• *He shaves every morning.*

PAST

I shaved we shaved
 you shaved you shaved
 he/she/it shaved they shaved

• *We shaved some soap to get thin flakes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shaven

PAST PERFECT ... had shaven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shaving we are shaving
 you are shaving you are shaving
 he/she/it is shaving they are shaving

• *Can you get the phone? I'm shaving.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shaving we were shaving
 you were shaving you were shaving
 he/she/it was shaving they were shaving

• *He was shaving by the time he was 16.*

FUTURE

... will shave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be shaving

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have shaven

PAST PASSIVE

I was shaven we were shaven
 you were shaven you were shaven
 he/she/it was shaven they were shaven

• *His head was shaven every few days.*

COMPLEMENTS

shave *cut off one's beard*

I need to shave.

Richard Nixon had such a heavy beard that he shaved twice a day.

When was the last time you shaved?

shave _____ *cut off the hair of with a razor*

OBJECT

Before the surgery, a nurse shaved **my back**.

Most women shave **their legs**.

Competitive swimmers shave **their whole bodies**.

Before the makeup could be applied, his head was shaven.

PASSIVE

shave _____ *cut a thin slice from*

OBJECT

We shaved **dark chocolate** to get chocolate curls.

Shave **the cheese** as thin as you can.

Thin slices of prosciutto were shaven for the appetizers.

PASSIVE

shave _____ *reduce slightly*

OBJECT

We have to shave **our prices** to remain competitive.

The factory shaved **costs** by turning the heat down five degrees.

The store shaved **ten cents** off the regular price.

The injury shaved **the odds of our winning**.

A few seconds were shaven from the old record.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

shave SEP **off** *cut [from]*

He shaved off a little sliver from the edge
 of the table with a plane.

- REGULAR
 IRREGULAR

shear | shears · sheared · have sheared
 shear | shears · sheared · have shorn

shear

123

PRESENT

I shear we shear
 you shear you shear
 he/she/it shears they shear
 • *He always shears the sheep himself.*

PAST

I sheared we sheared
 you sheared you sheared
 he/she/it sheared they sheared
 • *He sheared the rough edges off.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shorn

PAST PERFECT ... had shorn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shearing we are shearing
 you are shearing you are shearing
 he/she/it is shearing they are shearing
 • *We are shearing all this week.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shearing we were shearing
 you were shearing you were shearing
 he/she/it was shearing they were shearing
 • *She was shearing the plants almost to the ground.*

FUTURE ... will shear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shorn

PAST PASSIVE

I was shorn we were shorn
 you were shorn you were shorn
 he/she/it was shorn they were shorn
 • *The sheep were shorn last week.*

COMPLEMENTS

shear remove fleece from sheep

Nobody can shear all day long without getting exhausted.

Are we going to shear tomorrow?

We will shear until it gets too dark.

shear break off under stress

[OFTEN WITH off]

The wing sheared off in the crash.

A bolt sheared when we put too much weight on the press.

shear _____ remove [hair, wool, grass, etc.] by cutting/chopping

OBJECT

An army barber sheared **my hair** the day I was inducted.

Very few ranches shear **their own sheep** these days.

They shear **the putting greens** to about half an inch.

After the sheep have been shorn, the wool is weighed.

PASSIVE

shear _____ break off by cutting through [OFTEN WITH off]

OBJECT

The SUV swerved and sheared **a utility pole** off.

PASSIVE

The roof of the truck was shorn off in the collision.

shear _____ deprive

OBJECT + of OBJECT

Rebels have shorn **the dictator of power**.

A hospital gown sheared **me of all dignity**.

PASSIVE

I was shorn **of all my money** in the poker game.

PRESENT

I shed we shed
 you shed you shed
 he/she/it sheds they shed

• *The tree sheds its leaves all over the patio.*

PAST

I shed we shed
 you shed you shed
 he/she/it shed they shed

• *The cats shed all over my black sweater.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shed

PAST PERFECT ... had shed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shedding we are shedding
 you are shedding you are shedding
 he/she/it is shedding they are shedding

• *They are shedding their distrust of modern ways.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shedding we were shedding
 you were shedding you were shedding
 he/she/it was shedding they were shedding

• *The dogs were shedding as the days grew longer.*

FUTURE

... will shed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shedding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shed

PAST PASSIVE

I was shed we were shed
 you were shed you were shed
 he/she/it was shed they were shed

• *Our coats were shed as soon as we stepped onto the plane.*

COMPLEMENTS

shed cast off / lose fur/skin/leaves naturally

My dog sheds in the spring and autumn.

Most reptiles shed whenever they get too big for their old skin.

Most trees in temperate latitudes shed annually.

shed _____ cast off / lose [fur/skin/leaves] naturally

OBJECT

Most long-haired dogs shed **a lot of fur** in the spring.

All snakes shed **their skins**.

Most shade trees shed **their leaves**.

Cat hair had been shed all over the rug.

PASSIVE

shed _____ take off, get rid of

OBJECT

The kids shed **their clothes** and put on their bathing suits.

I hope to shed **about ten pounds** this year.

Many people never shed **their fear of public speaking**.

You will have to shed **some of your low-performing stocks**.

Their fear of foreign travel has never really been shed.

PASSIVE

shed _____ cause to flow/drain/slough off

OBJECT

My new jacket sheds **water** pretty well.

Our tent didn't seem to shed **a drop of water**.

The roof is steep enough to shed **snow**.

shed _____ let flow

OBJECT

We shed **many tears** over her death.

The soldier shed **a lot of blood** before a tourniquet was applied.

EXPRESSIONS

shed crocodile tears pretend that one is crying

The banks were shedding crocodile tears for depositors who lost money.

PRESENT

I shine you shine
 you shine you shine
 he/she/it shines they shine

* *The sun always shines in Arizona.*

PAST

I shone you shone
 you shone you shone
 he/she/it shone they shone

* *He shone the light right into our eyes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shone

PAST PERFECT ... had shone

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shining we are shining
 you are shining you are shining
 he/she/it is shining they are shining

* *A light is shining in the window.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shining we were shining
 you were shining you were shining
 he/she/it was shining they were shining

* *Their eyes were shining with excitement.*

FUTURE

... will shine

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be shining

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have shone

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was shone they were shone

* *The spotlight was shone on the escaping prisoners.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The irregular form *shone* is used both with and without an object, except in the sense “make bright by polishing”; the regular form *shined* is used only with an object.

shine give off / reflect light, be bright

The stars were shining brightly.
 The jewels shone in the display case.
 The sun, reflecting from the glass building, shone in our eyes.
 Their swords and spears shone in the moonlight.
 The princess’s hair shone like gold.
 The lighthouse shone through the mist, guiding us to port.

shine have a bright appearance

Fred’s face was shining with joy as he ran to meet Rosemary.
 Melissa shines in social studies.

shine do very well

shine _____ cause to give off light

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The guide shone **his flashlight into the back of the tomb.**
 The policeman is shining **his headlights on the abandoned car.**

PASSIVE

shine _____ make bright by polishing

OBJECT

The newspaper shone **light on corruption at City Hall.**
 Bright lights were shone **on the prisoners’ faces** all night long.
 The jeweler shined **the gem** until it sparkled.
 I shined **my shoes** carefully before the interview.

PHRASAL VERBS

shine down/in/out/up/etc.

give off light in a specified direction

The sun shone down on us as we
 walked along the beach.

shine _____ down/in/out/up/etc.
 cause to give off light in a specified
 direction

Shine the flashlight up a little higher.

shine through be clearly shown

Her personality really shines through in her photography.

PRESENT

I shoe	we shoe
you shoe	you shoe
he/she/it shoes	they shoe

• *He only shoes horses on the weekends.*

PAST

I shod	we shod
you shod	you shod
he/she/it shod	they shod

• *I shod their horses last fall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shod

PAST PERFECT ... had shod

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shoeing	we are shoeing
you are shoeing	you are shoeing
he/she/it is shoeing	they are shoeing

• *The blacksmith is shoeing horses this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shoeing	we were shoeing
you were shoeing	you were shoeing
he/she/it was shoeing	they were shoeing

• *People were shoeing horses in the Middle Ages.*

FUTURE

... will shoe

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be shoeing

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have shod

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was shod	they were shod

• *Racehorses were often shod with aluminum shoes.*

COMPLEMENTS

shoe _____ attach protective shoes to the hooves of

OBJECT

Horse owners must shoe **their horses** regularly.

A professional blacksmith usually shoes **horses**.

PASSIVE

Your horses should be shod professionally.

shoe _____ furnish/fit with footwear [ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]

PASSIVE

In Hawaii, most kids are shod only in flip-flops.

The peasant children were shod in flimsy leather moccasins.

PRESENT

I shoot we shoot
 you shoot you shoot
 he/she/it shoots they shoot
 • *MacInnis shoots and scores!*

PAST

I shot we shot
 you shot you shot
 he/she/it shot they shot
 • *They shot several deer this fall.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shot

PAST PERFECT ... had shot

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shooting we are shooting
 you are shooting you are shooting
 he/she/it is shooting they are shooting
 • *The guards are shooting from the perimeter.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shooting we were shooting
 you were shooting you were shooting
 he/she/it was shooting they were shooting
 • *They were shooting the scene in our neighborhood.*

FUTURE ... will shoot

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shooting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shot

PAST PASSIVE

I was shot we were shot
 you were shot you were shot
 he/she/it was shot they were shot
 • *Up in the Air was shot in St. Louis.*

COMPLEMENTS

shoot fire a weapon

The police were ordered to shoot if necessary.
 I picked up the bow and shot.

shoot hit/kick/throw/strike a ball/
 puck toward a goal

James shoots from the baseline. [BASKETBALL]
 Beckham shoots from just outside the penalty area. [SOCCER]
 Pronger shoots under the goalie's glove. [HOCKEY]

shoot make a photograph/film

Just point the camera and shoot.
 The crew is shooting in Las Vegas.

shoot _____ fire [a gun]

OBJECT

Can you shoot a **rifle**?
 Revelers shot **pistols** into the air on New Year's Eve.

shoot _____ strike with a bullet/arrow

OBJECT

An unknown assailant shot **three people**.
 We were shooting **tin cans** behind the barn.

PASSIVE

Somebody has been shot.

WH-CLAUSE

You can only shoot **what is in season**.
 Shoot **whatever moves**.

shoot _____ photograph, film

OBJECT

We want to shoot **the boats in the harbor**.
 They were shooting a **video of the parade**.
 The dream sequence was shot in black and white.

PASSIVE

shoot _____ move very quickly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car shot **through the intersection**.
 The song shot **straight to the top of the charts**.

PHRASAL VERBS

**shoot away/down/in/off/out/
 over/up/etc.** move very quickly in
 a specified direction

The motorcycle shot away when the
 light turned green.

shoot for _____ have as a goal

Eli is shooting for a Ph.D. in environmental sciences.

shoot up grow quickly

The daffodils shot up overnight.
 Yu-chan is really shooting up.

PHRASAL VERBS

show SEP **around/away/down/in/out/up/etc.** *lead/guide in a specified direction*

show SEP **off** *display, exhibit*

show off *do something to attract attention*

show up *arrive*

show up *appear*

show up *be easily seen*

show SEP **up** *outmatch, humble*

Sam was showing the White House visitors around.

A guide showed us down to the cafeteria.

The bride-to-be showed off her wedding gown.

Ronny was always showing off in front of the girls.

Ozzie showed up just in time for dinner.

The Republican ratings show up as the red line on your screen.

His thinning hair really shows up in this photo.

Fred showed everybody up at the math contest.

EXPRESSIONS

show [one's] face *make an appearance*

show [one's] hand *reveal one's intentions*

show [one's] teeth *act in a threatening manner*

show signs of _____ *give indications of*

show [someone] the ropes *show [someone] how to do something*

show [one's] true colors *show what one is really like*

I wonder if Todd will show his face at the party tonight.

He never showed his hand while discussing free trade.

Boyd showed his teeth whenever someone criticized his girlfriend.

The patient shows signs of bipolar disorder.

The student is showing signs of fatigue.

Don't worry; the secretary who's retiring will show you the ropes.

The boss showed his true colors when he laughed about firing three employees right before Christmas.

PRESENT

I show we show
 you show you show
 he/she/it shows they show
 • *The picture shows a vase of sunflowers.*

PAST

I showed we showed
 you showed you showed
 he/she/it showed they showed
 • *He showed no emotion as he spoke.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shown

PAST PERFECT ... had shown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am showing we are showing
 you are showing you are showing
 he/she/it is showing they are showing
 • *I am showing some friends around the garden.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was showing we were showing
 you were showing you were showing
 he/she/it was showing they were showing
 • *The movie was showing at a theater downtown.*

FUTURE ... will show

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be showing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shown

PAST PASSIVE

I was shown we were shown
 you were shown you were shown
 he/she/it was shown they were shown
 • *The theory was shown to be seriously flawed.*

COMPLEMENTS

show *be visible/present/presented/ displayed*

The house's age is obviously showing.
 The buds are just beginning to show.
 Nothing showed on the X-rays.
 The wine stain doesn't show.
 Our visitors never showed.
 When is the movie showing?
 He never lets his feelings show.

show _____ *lead, guide*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

May I show **you to your seats**, ladies?
 The receptionist will show **us to the conference room**.

show _____ *display*

OBJECT

You must show **your ID card** before you can enter.
 The car showed **signs of having been in an accident**.
 Her paintings have been shown all over the world.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Show **me the money**.
 The realtor showed **some prospective buyers the house**.
 They always showed **their employees real consideration**.
 Show **the money to me**.
 The realtor showed **the house to some prospective buyers**.
 They always showed **real consideration to their employees**.

to PARAPHRASE

show _____ *demonstrate*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

John showed **himself to be an excellent landscaper**.
 The map showed **the city to be smaller than we had been told**.
 The results were shown **to be faked**.
 The concert shows **that Louise has made enormous progress**.
 We showed **them that we were fully prepared to do the job**.

PASSIVE

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE

The X-ray showed **what had happened**.
 Janet showed **me how much we could save on insurance**.

(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE

The chart showed **how much to invest**.
 The manual shows **you what to do**.
 Lou will show **them where to park**.



PRESENT

I shrink we shrink
 you shrink you shrink
 he/she/it shrinks they shrink
 • *Wool shrinks if washed in hot water.*

PAST

I shrank we shrank
 you shrank you shrank
 he/she/it shrank they shrank
 • *The architect shrank the house by a third.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shrunk**PAST PERFECT** ... had shrunk**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am shrinking we are shrinking
 you are shrinking you are shrinking
 he/she/it is shrinking they are shrinking
 • *Our margin of error is shrinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shrinking we were shrinking
 you were shrinking you were shrinking
 he/she/it was shrinking they were shrinking
 • *The laundry was always shrinking my shirts.*

FUTURE ... will shrink**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be shrinking**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have shrunk**PAST PASSIVE**

I was shrunk we were shrunk
 you were shrunk you were shrunk
 he/she/it was shrunk they were shrunk
 • *The deficit was shrunk significantly in the third quarter.*

COMPLEMENTS**shrink** *become smaller*

Hot metal shrinks as it cools.
 Our budget is shrinking by the minute.
 Average take-home pay has shrunk over the last five years.
 Arctic sea ice is shrinking more every summer.
 My waist has shrunk a bit, thanks to my diet.

shrink _____ *cause to become smaller*

OBJECT

He shrank **the wool sweaters** by using water that was too hot.
 We waterproofed the wet barrels by shrinking **them** in the sun.
 We are trying to shrink **our inventory of unsold goods**.
 Our profits have been shrunk by rising costs.

PASSIVE

shrink _____ *try to avoid*

from OBJECT

Most actors don't shrink **from the limelight**.
 The president does not shrink **from his role as commander-in-chief**.

from PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Reggie won't shrink **from telling the truth on the witness stand**.
 Scientists don't shrink **from examining all the data**.

PHRASAL VERBS**shrink away/back** (from _____)*draw back* (from [someone/something]),
as in fear

The children shrank away from the homeless man.
 The cats shrank back at the sight of the dogs.

PRESENT

I shut we shut
 you shut you shut
 he/she/it shuts they shut
 • *Sandy shuts the store by 8 P.M.*

PAST

I shut we shut
 you shut you shut
 he/she/it shut they shut
 • *He shut himself in his office.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has shut

PAST PERFECT ... had shut

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am shutting we are shutting
 you are shutting you are shutting
 he/she/it is shutting they are shutting
 • *Hurry! The ushers are shutting the doors.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was shutting we were shutting
 you were shutting you were shutting
 he/she/it was shutting they were shutting
 • *The highway patrol was shutting the roads.*

FUTURE ... will shut

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be shutting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have shut

PAST PASSIVE

I was shut we were shut
 you were shut you were shut
 he/she/it was shut they were shut
 • *The gates were shut by the guard.*

COMPLEMENTS

shut close

The door is shutting behind him.
 The gate shut with a loud crash.
 My eyes slowly shut and I fell asleep.
 The lid shut on my fingers.
 We heard the trap shut with a snap.
 All government offices shut at five.

shut _____ cause to close

OBJECT

I shut **the windows** and drew the curtains.
 President Roosevelt shut **all the banks** temporarily to prevent failures.
 He shut **the book** and returned it to the shelf.
 The Navy is going to shut **the entire shipyard**.
 Once inside, I shut **the umbrella**.
 The entrance was shut after the last worker arrived.

shut _____ confine, pen

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We always shut **the animals in the barn** at night.
 The blockade shut **the enemy fleet inside the port**.
 The prisoners were shut **inside a makeshift jail**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

shut SEP down close permanently

Producers shut the play down after 10 performances.

shut SEP in surround, enclose

The car manufacturer shut down three automotive plants.

shut off stop operating

The cowboys shut the cattle in.

shut SEP off turn off

The motor shut off 15 minutes ago.

shut SEP off stop movement into and out of

They shut off the gas before leaving on vacation.

Police shut the street off during the standoff.
 Authorities shut off the downtown area because of a bomb threat.

shut SEP out exclude

The manager shut us out of the decision making.

shut up stop talking [INFORMAL]

Would you shut up and listen to me?

shut SEP up lock up

Guards shut the prisoners up in their cells.

PRESENT

I sing we sing
 you sing you sing
 he/she/it sings they sing
 • *He sings in the church choir.*

PAST

I sang we sang
 you sang you sang
 he/she/it sang they sang
 • *She sang several songs by Bellini.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sung

PAST PERFECT ... had sung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am singing we are singing
 you are singing you are singing
 he/she/it is singing they are singing
 • *The birds are singing in the trees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was singing we were singing
 you were singing you were singing
 he/she/it was singing they were singing
 • *The group was singing around the campfire.*

FUTURE ... will sing

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be singing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sung

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was sung they were sung
 • *The opera was sung in English.*

COMPLEMENTS

sing *make musical sounds with one's voice*

Do you like to sing?
 Everybody can learn to sing.
 She sings beautifully.
 Jeff sang at his and Susan's wedding.
 The birds are already singing by 5:30.

sing *make musical sounds, hum, buzz, whistle*

The engine's vibration was making some metal part sing.
 The telephone wires were singing in the wind.
 The teakettle began to sing.

sing _____ *perform [a piece of vocal music]*

OBJECT

The choir sang **several traditional Christmas carols**.
 The Beatles sang **their own compositions**.
 Herbie sang **1960s hits** at the class reunion.

PASSIVE

The national anthem is sung before every baseball game.

PHRASAL VERBS

sing along *sing together*

Everyone at the party sang along with the music.

EXPRESSIONS

sing a different tune *have changed one's opinion*

He used to favor the death penalty; now he's singing a different tune.

sing [someone's] praises *say good things about [someone]*

Your English teacher is singing your praises.

sing the praises of _____ *say good things about [someone/something]*

The whole office is singing the praises of the new copier.

sing _____ **to sleep** *put to sleep by singing*

The babysitter was able to sing the baby to sleep.

PRESENT

I sink we sink
 you sink you sink
 he/she/it sinks they sink

• *Productivity sinks in the summer.*

PAST

I sank we sank
 you sank you sank
 he/she/it sank they sank

• *The stock market sank again today.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sunk

PAST PERFECT ... had sunk

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sinking we are sinking
 you are sinking you are sinking
 he/she/it is sinking they are sinking

• *Oil production is gradually sinking.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sinking we were sinking
 you were sinking you were sinking
 he/she/it was sinking they were sinking

• *Our spirits were sinking by the minute.*

FUTURE ... will sink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sunk

PAST PASSIVE

I was sunk we were sunk
 you were sunk you were sunk
 he/she/it was sunk they were sunk

• *The boat was sunk in 50 feet of water.*

COMPLEMENTS

sink *go below the surface*

The ship sank in less than an hour.
 My boots were sinking in the soft mud.
 The wheels sank into the snowdrift.

sink *go down gradually*

The hot air balloon was sinking to the earth.
 Tired and hungry, the travelers sank to their knees.
 The sun was sinking in the west.
 The temperature sank as night fell.
 Senator Blather's poll numbers were steadily sinking.
 The value of our portfolio has sunk by 20%.

sink *become weaker*

My heart sank when I heard the bad news.
 The patient in Room 413 is sinking rapidly, Doctor.

sink _____ *cause to go below the surface*

OBJECT

An explosion in the engine room sank **the fishing boat**.

PASSIVE

I sank **a shovel** into the wet ground.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The barges were sunk by the storm.

PASSIVE

We sank **the screws into the wood**.

sink _____ *go gradually [into a certain state/condition]*

into OBJECT

The dog sank **its teeth into my leg**.

The steel supports were sunk **in five feet of concrete**.

The family sank **into poverty**.

The once-proud company sank **into oblivion**.

His widow and orphans sank **into despair**.

sink _____ *ruin*

OBJECT

These awful rumors could sink **the company**.

The defeat sank **all our hopes for the championship**.

PASSIVE

The plans for expansion were sunk by the economic downturn.

PHRASAL VERBS

sink back *lean back and relax*

After work, I poured a drink and sank
 back on the sofa.

sink in *be understood*

Has Trina's desperate situation sunk in yet?
 The teacher's explanation will sink in eventually.

PRESENT

I sit we sit
you sit you sit
he/she/it sits they sit

• *The cat always sits by the window.*

PAST

I sat we sat
you sat you sat
he/she/it sat they sat

• *We sat on a park bench in the sun.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sat

PAST PERFECT ... had sat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sitting we are sitting
you are sitting you are sitting
he/she/it is sitting they are sitting

• *I'm just sitting here, waiting for somebody.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sitting we were sitting
you were sitting you were sitting
he/she/it was sitting they were sitting

• *We were sitting by the fireplace.*

FUTURE

... will sit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sat

PAST PASSIVE

Sit is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sit *be seated*

Never stand when you can sit.

The plane can't take off until you sit and fasten your seat belt.

I can't sit very long before my legs start to hurt.

We trained the dog to sit on command.

sit *be in session, meet*

[OF A GOVERNMENTAL BODY]

By law, the Supreme Court sits on the first Monday in October.

The budget committee is sitting this afternoon.

The state legislature does not normally sit during the summer.

sit _____ *be seated/located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

I sat **next to him** at dinner.

The flock of birds sat **on a telephone wire**.

We are sitting **on the runway**, waiting to take off.

The statue sits **in the center of the town square**.

When I got to the office, a new computer was sitting **on my desk**.

My briefcase was sitting **by the chair**, right where I had left it.

sit _____ *have enough seats for*

OBJECT

Our dining room table sits **eight**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sit **around** *spend time idly*

We're just sitting around listening to music.

sit **back** *relax*

We sat back and enjoyed the show.

sit **back/by** *not be involved*

I refuse to sit back and do nothing when their lives are in danger.

sit **SEP down** *cause to be in a sitting position*

Momma sat us kids down and told us that Grandma had died.

sit **in for** _____ *replace*

The sports editor sat in for the regular news anchor last night.

sit **in (on** _____) *attend ([an event])*

The board meeting is tomorrow morning, and I'd like to sit in.

Would it be okay if I sat in on your Language and Culture class?

sit **on** _____ *be a member of*

She sat on the jury that convicted my neighbor.

Senator Blather sits on the Committee on Appropriations.

sit **on** _____ *delay in revealing*

The reporter is sitting on a story about the president's health.

sit **SEP out** *not participate in*

I'm going to sit this dance out.

sit **through** _____ *attend all of*

Do we have to sit through another boring lecture?

sit **up** *sit upright*

Sit up! Slouching is bad for your posture.

sit **up** *not go to bed*

Kristen sat up knitting half the night.

sit **up** *become suddenly alert*

Cassie sat up suddenly and looked at the door.

PRESENT

I slay we slay
you slay you slay
he/she/it slays they slay

• *His jokes always slay me.*

PAST

I slew we slew
you slew you slew
he/she/it slew they slew

• *The killer slew his victim in cold blood.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slain

PAST PERFECT ... had slain

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slaying we are slaying
you are slaying you are slaying
he/she/it is slaying they are slaying

• *Storm troopers are slaying the town's inhabitants.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slaying we were slaying
you were slaying you were slaying
he/she/it was slaying they were slaying

• *My brother was slaying dragons in a video game.*

FUTURE

... will slay

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be slaying

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have slain

PAST PASSIVE

I was slain we were slain
you were slain you were slain
he/she/it was slain they were slain

• *Hundreds of soldiers were slain in the attack.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: In the past tense, *slew* is ordinarily used in the sense “kill violently” and *slayed* is ordinarily used in the sense “amuse immensely.”

slay _____ kill violently

OBJECT

Some meat processing plants slay **a thousand cows** a day.
Serial killers slay **multiple victims** before they are caught.

PASSIVE

How many people are slain by drunk drivers every year?
The victims were slain in their beds.

slay _____ amuse immensely

OBJECT

His comedy act slayed **his audiences**.
You slay **me**, you really do!
He can slay **a crowd** just by looking at them.

PRESENT

I sleep	we sleep
you sleep	you sleep
he/she/it sleeps	they sleep

• *He usually sleeps seven hours a night.*

PAST

I slept	we slept
you slept	you slept
he/she/it slept	they slept

• *The kids slept in a tent in the backyard.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slept

PAST PERFECT ... had slept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sleeping	we are sleeping
you are sleeping	you are sleeping
he/she/it is sleeping	they are sleeping

• *I am not sleeping very well lately.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sleeping	we were sleeping
you were sleeping	you were sleeping
he/she/it was sleeping	they were sleeping

• *Our guests were sleeping in the spare bedroom.*

FUTURE ... will sleep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sleeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slept

PAST PASSIVE

Sleep is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

sleep *not be awake*

We all need to sleep.
I slept through the storm.
He only slept a few hours last night.
Be quiet; the baby is sleeping.

sleep *be inactive*

New York never sleeps.
The surveillance system never sleeps.
The security force never sleeps.

sleep _____ *take as a place for sleeping*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The children sleep **in their own bedrooms**.
We usually sleep **at a motel** when we visit my grandparents.
When we go camping, we sleep **in an ultralight tent**.
If I get home late, I sleep **downstairs** so I don't wake anybody.

sleep _____ *provide sleeping accommodations for*

OBJECT

The suite sleeps **four adults** comfortably.
The studio apartments only sleep **two people**.
The lodge will be able to sleep **our entire family**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sleep **in** *sleep after one's normal time to rise*

Sorry, I slept in this morning.
What's for lunch?

sleep **SEP** **off** *recover from while sleeping*

Sherri drank too much at the party and had to sleep it off.

sleep **on** _____ *delay a decision on*

I'll sleep on the matter and give you an answer tomorrow.

sleep **through** _____ *be asleep and unaware of*

Our neighbors slept through the thunderstorm.

EXPRESSIONS

sleep **a wink** *sleep briefly*
[USUALLY NEGATIVE]

I didn't sleep a wink last night.

sleep **like a baby/log** *sleep long and well*

I played two hours of tennis last evening and slept like a log.

PRESENT

I slide we slide
 you slide you slide
 he/she/it slides they slide
 • *The glass door slides easily now.*

PAST

I slid we slid
 you slid you slid
 he/she/it slid they slid
 • *The car slid into the ditch.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slid

PAST PERFECT ... had slid

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sliding we are sliding
 you are sliding you are sliding
 he/she/it is sliding they are sliding
 • *Look out! The car is sliding.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sliding we were sliding
 you were sliding you were sliding
 he/she/it was sliding they were sliding
 • *The kids were sliding down Prosser Hill.*

FUTURE ... will slide

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sliding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slid

PAST PASSIVE

I was slid we were slid
 you were slid you were slid
 he/she/it was slid they were slid
 • *The logs were slid down the hill.*

COMPLEMENTS

slide slip, shift, drop

Hang on to me—I'm sliding.
 The bag of groceries slid from my hand.
 Make sure the load doesn't slide.

slide gradually become worse

His reputation is beginning to slide.
 Our once-strong financial position was sliding.

slide _____ move/glide smoothly over a surface

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The car slid **into a snowbank**.
 I slid **behind the wheel**.
 The canoes slid **into the water**.
 The truck in front of us was sliding **all over the road**.
 The drawer slides **on side-mounted tracks**.

slide _____ gradually go/move [into a worse condition]

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The patient was sliding **into a coma**.
 The company gradually slid **into mediocrity**.
 The quality of dental care was sliding **downhill**.
 The temperature slid **into the twenties** overnight.

slide _____ put/push/move smoothly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

She slid the **keys into her purse**.
 I slid **my hands** gently **under the kitten** and lifted it up.
 Just slide **your paper under my office door**.

PASSIVE

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The refrigerator was slid **into place**.
 The suspect slid **the detective his driver's license**.
 The cook slid **me a bowl of soup**.
 The suspect slid **his driver's license to the detective**.
 The cook slid **a bowl of soup to me**.

TO PARAPHRASE

PHRASAL VERBS

slide around/back/down/off/out/under/up/etc. slide in a specified direction

We slid back down several times.
 The roofer lost his balance and slid off.
 The window easily slides up and down.

slide SEP **around/back/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** cause to slide in a specified direction

The goalie slid the puck back to a defenseman.
 The locksmith can't slide the bolt in and out.

PRESENT

I sling we sling
 you sling you sling
 he/she/it slings they sling

• *He slings mud in every campaign he's in.*

PAST

I slung we slung
 you slung you slung
 he/she/it slung they slung

• *He slung a rope over a branch for a swing.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slung

PAST PERFECT ... had slung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slinging we are slinging
 you are slinging you are slinging
 he/she/it is slinging they are slinging

• *We are slinging a hammock between these trees.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slinging we were slinging
 you were slinging you were slinging
 he/she/it was slinging they were slinging

• *They were slinging stones at the attackers.*

FUTURE

... will sling

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be slinging

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have slung

PAST PASSIVE

I was slung we were slung
 you were slung you were slung
 he/she/it was slung they were slung

• *A blanket was carelessly slung across the door opening.*

COMPLEMENTS

sling _____ hurl with a swinging motion

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids were slinging **rocks at the crows in the field.**

David slung **a stone at Goliath.**

Fishermen slung **their nets over the water.**

PASSIVE

A volley of steel balls was slung **at the attackers.**

sling _____ place/toss carelessly/quickly

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I slung **a sandwich and some fruit into my backpack.**

The waiter slung **some food on the table** and walked away.

She slung **her long hair back from her face.**

PASSIVE

Our supplies were slung **onto the counter** without a glance from the clerk.

sling _____ suspend loosely

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

They had slung **a wire from one tower to the other.**

PASSIVE

A bridge had been slung **across the river far below.**

EXPRESSIONS

sling mud (at _____) insult, discredit

The candidates were slinging mud at each other throughout the debate.

PRESENT

I slink we slink
you slink you slink
he/she/it slinks they slink

• *The senator always slinks from controversy.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slinking we are slinking
you are slinking you are slinking
he/she/it is slinking they are slinking

• *My dog is slinking around, looking guilty.*

PAST

I slunk we slunk
you slunk you slunk
he/she/it slunk they slunk

• *He slunk back, embarrassed by his error.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slinking we were slinking
you were slinking you were slinking
he/she/it was slinking they were slinking

• *A line of dancers was slinking across the stage.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slunk

PAST PERFECT ... had slunk

FUTURE ... will slink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be slinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slunk

PAST PASSIVE

Slink is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

slink _____ move furtively

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The cat was slinking **closer and closer to the bird.**

The homeless man slunk **from alley to alley.**

slink _____ move sensuously/provocatively

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Delilah slunk **toward Sampson.**

The dancers were slinking **around the stage** seductively.

The models slunk **down the runway.**

PHRASAL VERBS

slink around/away/off/out/etc.

slink in a specified direction

A small animal was slinking around
in the dark.

The thief slunk away from the sudden light.

My husband slunk off to a bar when my mother arrived.

PRESENT

I slit we slit
 you slit you slit
 he/she/it slits they slit

• *He slits letters open with a pocketknife.*

PAST

I slit we slit
 you slit you slit
 he/she/it slit they slit

• *She slit the tape and opened the package.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has slit

PAST PERFECT ... had slit

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am slitting we are slitting
 you are slitting you are slitting
 he/she/it is slitting they are slitting

• *We are slitting the material into thin strips.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was slitting we were slitting
 you were slitting you were slitting
 he/she/it was slitting they were slitting

• *The staff was slitting the envelopes open.*

FUTURE ... will slit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be slitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have slit

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was slit they were slit

• *The victim's throat was slit.*

COMPLEMENTS

slit _____ make a long narrow cut in

OBJECT

Tommy slit **his thumb** on a piece of glass.

A friend of mine slit **her wrists**, but we got her to the emergency room in time.

The workers are slitting **a shallow trench** to lay the cable.

PASSIVE

The birds' throats are slit and then the feathers are removed.

slit _____ cut lengthwise [into strips]

OBJECT + into OBJECT

We slit **the paper into two-inch strips** and wrote a name on each.

The prisoner slit **the sheet into strips to be fashioned into a rope**.

I slit **the cardboard into pieces to be used as spacers**.

PASSIVE

The banana leaves had been slit **into strips**.

PRESENT

I sneak we sneak
 you sneak you sneak
 he/she/it sneaks they sneak

• *He sneaks a candy bar at bedtime.*

PAST

I snuck we snuck
 you snuck you snuck
 he/she/it snuck they snuck

• *We snuck out of the meeting early.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has snuck

PAST PERFECT ... had snuck

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sneaking we are sneaking
 you are sneaking you are sneaking
 he/she/it is sneaking they are sneaking

• *The prisoners are sneaking past the guards.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sneaking we were sneaking
 you were sneaking you were sneaking
 he/she/it was sneaking they were sneaking

• *I was sneaking a quick snack in the kitchen.*

FUTURE

... will sneak

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be sneaking

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have snuck

PAST PASSIVE

I was snuck we were snuck
 you were snuck you were snuck
 he/she/it was snuck they were snuck

• *Food was snuck out of the cafeteria.*

COMPLEMENTS

sneak _____ move quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

They were trying to sneak **into the game**.
 We had to sneak **back into the dorms** after curfew.
 Apparently, the prisoners had snuck **over the wall**.
 Someone had snuck **into the coffee room** and eaten
 all the donuts.

sneak _____ take/bring quietly and secretly in order not to be noticed

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I snuck **a recorder into the meeting**.
 The kids had snuck **some cookies out of the kitchen**.
 They had snuck **some friends into the hotel pool**.
 Something had been snuck **out of the secure area**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

sneak along/around/away/in/out/up/etc. sneak in a specified direction

Nobody likes people who sneak around.
 The kids snuck away with a bag of candy.

sneak _____ along/away/in/out/up/etc. sneak [someone/something] in a specified direction

I wasn't invited, but my friends snuck me in.

sneak up on _____ approach quietly and secretly

We snuck up on Dad while he was working the crossword puzzle.
 Sandy snuck up on me and tapped me on the shoulder.

PRESENT

I sow	we sow
you sow	you sow
he/she/it sows	they sow

• *Few people sow by hand anymore.*

PAST

I sowed	we sowed
you sowed	you sowed
he/she/it sowed	they sowed

• *We sowed wheat and barley this year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sown

PAST PERFECT ... had sown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sowing	we are sowing
you are sowing	you are sowing
he/she/it is sowing	they are sowing

• *They are sowing rumors about our candidate.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sowing	we were sowing
you were sowing	you were sowing
he/she/it was sowing	they were sowing

• *The farmers were sowing their fields this week.*

FUTURE ... will sow

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sowing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sown

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was sown	they were sown

• *Nothing but confusion was sown by the new policy.*

COMPLEMENTS

sow *plant seeds to produce a crop*

Farmers sow in straight lines so they can weed between the rows.

sow _____ *plant/scatter (seeds)*

OBJECT

When we sow **seeds** by hand, it is called “broadcasting.” Many farmers in the United States only sow **genetically engineered seeds**.

“A man reaps **what** he sows.” [BIBLE]

When seeds were sown by hand, birds ate half of them.

PASSIVE

sow _____ *cause*

OBJECT

Their rigid rules have sown **resentment**.

Agitators sowed **fear** among the townspeople.

Doubts about his leadership had been sown.

PASSIVE

EXPRESSIONS

sow [one's] (wild) oats *behave wildly/recklessly in one's youth*

Gary was sowing his wild oats the summer before he started college.

sow the seeds of _____ *set in motion*

Thomas Paine sowed the seeds of the American Revolution.

sow the wind and reap the **whirlwind** *start trouble that becomes worse than one expected*

“They sow the wind and reap the whirlwind.” [BIBLE]

PRESENT

I speak we speak
 you speak you speak
 he/she/it speaks they speak
 • *He speaks really well.*

PAST

I spoke we spoke
 you spoke you spoke
 he/she/it spoke they spoke
 • *They spoke about website design.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spoken

PAST PERFECT ... had spoken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speaking we are speaking
 you are speaking you are speaking
 he/she/it is speaking they are speaking
 • *I am speaking at the luncheon this afternoon.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speaking we were speaking
 you were speaking you were speaking
 he/she/it was speaking they were speaking
 • *They were speaking French at the time.*

FUTURE ... will speak

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be speaking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spoken

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was spoken they were spoken
 • *English was spoken everywhere they traveled.*

COMPLEMENTS

speak talk, say words

Are you hurt? Can you speak?
 Most children start speaking before their second birthday.
 He was so upset he couldn't speak.

speak have a conversation

They need to find a place where they can speak privately.
 They were speaking in whispers.
 After their argument, they weren't speaking for months.

speak make a public presentation

Everybody at the conference wants to hear her speak.
 It takes a lot of practice to speak in public.
 I am not used to speaking without notes.

speak _____ say, express

OBJECT

They are speaking **the truth about what happened**.
 He spoke **gentle words of wisdom**.

speak _____ have a conversation with

to OBJECT

We spoke **to the police** about the break-in.
 Have you spoken **to your mother**?
 May I speak **to Mr. Huntleigh**?

speak _____ talk in [a specific language]

OBJECT

She can speak **German and Dutch** pretty well.
How many languages do you speak?

PASSIVE

Both English and French were spoken at the conference.

PHRASAL VERBS

speak for _____ say something on behalf of

I am speaking only for myself.
 The candidate spoke for lowering taxes.
 "I speak for the trees, for the trees have no tongues."
 [DR. SEUSS]

speak for _____ ask for

I'd like to speak for the last slice of cheesecake.
 The last copy of the book is already spoken for.

speak of _____ speak about

Grandpa spoke of hardships during the Great Depression.

speak out express one's opinion

Thomas speaks out at every meeting he attends.

speak up speak more loudly

Speak up! We can't hear you in the back row.

speak up for _____ speak in support of

She always speaks up for military families.

PRESENT

I speed we speed
 you speed you speed
 he/she/it speeds they speed
 • *He speeds when he gets on the freeway.*

PAST

I sped we sped
 you sped you sped
 he/she/it sped they sped
 • *The sailboat sped before the wind.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sped

PAST PERFECT ... had sped

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am speeding we are speeding
 you are speeding you are speeding
 he/she/it is speeding they are speeding
 • *She is already speeding away.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was speeding we were speeding
 you were speeding you were speeding
 he/she/it was speeding they were speeding
 • *We got pulled over because we were speeding.*

FUTURE ... will speed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be speeding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sped

PAST PASSIVE

Speed is rarely used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

speed *go/move fast*

The dogs sped across the roadway.
 The skiers sped down the slope toward the lodge.
 The horses are speeding around the final turn.
 The rescuers were speeding to the scene of the accident.

speed *drive faster than the legal limit*

If you speed, you could lose your driver's license.
 He was speeding in a construction zone and had to pay a huge fine.

speed _____ *cause to go/move faster*
 OBJECT

We changed the rules to speed **the approval process**.
 Some men will try anything to speed **hair growth**.
 Trying to speed **an entrenched bureaucracy** is next to impossible.

PHRASAL VERBS

speed along/away/down/over/past/up/etc. *go fast in a specified direction*

An ambulance sped past with its siren blaring.
 Teens were speeding up and down Main Street.

speed _____ *along/away/down/over/past/up/etc. cause to go faster in a specified direction*

The manager tried to speed the process along.
 The delivery service sped the package over.

speed up *go/move faster*

Ricky sped up when he saw the police car.
 We tend to speed up going downhill.

speed SEP **up** *cause to go/move faster*

We really need to speed up the production line.

PRESENT

I spend we spend
 you spend you spend
 he/she/it spends they spend
 • *He spends too much when he eats out.*

PAST

I spent we spent
 you spent you spent
 he/she/it spent they spent
 • *We spent some time with my parents.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spent

PAST PERFECT ... had spent

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spending we are spending
 you are spending you are spending
 he/she/it is spending they are spending
 • *We are spending too much time on this project.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spending we were spending
 you were spending you were spending
 he/she/it was spending they were spending
 • *We were spending a week in Phoenix.*

FUTURE ... will spend

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spending

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spent

PAST PASSIVE

I was spent we were spent
 you were spent you were spent
 he/she/it was spent they were spent
 • *A fortune was spent trying to fix the problem.*

COMPLEMENTS

spend pay out money

They just love to spend.
 We can't keep spending at this rate.
 They spend and spend until they are broke.

spend _____ pay [money]

OBJECT

We will spend **a lot** fixing our roof.
 They spend **over half their income** on housing.
 You have to spend **money** to make money.
 The insurance settlement had already been spent.

PASSIVE

spend _____ be occupied for [a period of time]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

I will spend **all of next week in Chicago**.
 The kids spent **half the summer at camp**.

OBJECT + PRESENT PARTICIPLE

We spent **all week working on the budget**.
 A horse spends **three hours a day sleeping**.

PASSIVE

Last weekend was spent **cleaning out the garage**.

spend _____ exhaust, use up

OBJECT

The storm finally spent **itself** during the night.
 General Lee had already spent **all his reserves**.
 Your talent would be better spent writing textbooks.

PASSIVE

PRESENT

I spin we spin
 you spin you spin
 he/she/it spins they spin

• *The disk spins at a high speed.*

PAST

I spun we spun
 you spun you spun
 he/she/it spun they spun

• *I spun the wool to make yarn.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spun

PAST PERFECT ... had spun

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spinning we are spinning
 you are spinning you are spinning
 he/she/it is spinning they are spinning

• *The senator's office is spinning the story.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spinning we were spinning
 you were spinning you were spinning
 he/she/it was spinning they were spinning

• *Our wheels were spinning on the ice.*

FUTURE

... will spin

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spinning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spun

PAST PASSIVE

I was spun we were spun
 you were spun you were spun
 he/she/it was spun they were spun

• *The bets were placed and the roulette wheel was spun.*

COMPLEMENTS

spin whirl around quickly

The altimeter was spinning fast.
 The dryer is still spinning.
 Your wheels will spin in this slush.
 The earth spins on a 23.4-degree axis.
 The policeman spun when he heard the shot.

spin seem to be whirling around quickly, as if to make someone dizzy

I have to sit down; my head is spinning.
 The news was enough to make your head spin.

spin _____ cause to whirl around quickly
 OBJECT

I spun **the propeller** to get the engine started.
 The drivers were spinning **their wheels** in the soft ground.
 I showed the kids how to spin **their new top**.
 The server spun **the ball** so that it bounced at an odd angle.
 The wheel was spun by the next contestant.

PASSIVE

spin _____ draw out and twist into yarn

My daughter spins **wool fleece** into yarn.
 The cashmere yarn had been spun by hand.

OBJECT

PASSIVE

spin _____ make a web [OF SPIDERS]

Spiders had spun **webs** in every corner.

OBJECT

spin _____ interpret in a way favorable to oneself

The aides were busily spinning **the election results**.
 He was trying to spin **the news** to minimize the damage.
 The story was spun until it was unrecognizable.

OBJECT

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

spin away/off/out/etc. spin in a specified direction

The Frisbee is spinning away toward TipTop.

spin SEP away/off/out/etc. cause to spin in a specified direction

He spun himself away from the computer.

spin off separate and fly away from something that is spinning

The fan blade may spin off if you don't tighten it.

spin SEP off create a separate company from part of an existing one

The chemical company spun off its herbicide division.

PRESENT

I spit	we spit
you spit	you spit
he/she/it spits	they spit

• *Our cat spits when she sees a dog.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spitting	we are spitting
you are spitting	you are spitting
he/she/it is spitting	they are spitting

• *The victim is spitting blood.*

PAST

I spit/spat	we spit/spat
you spit/spat	you spit/spat
he/she/it spit/spat	they spit/spat

• *He coughed and spit into his handkerchief.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spitting	we were spitting
you were spitting	you were spitting
he/she/it was spitting	they were spitting

• *They were spitting watermelon seeds.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spit/spat

PAST PERFECT ... had spit/spat

FUTURE ... will spit

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spit/spat

PAST PASSIVE

I was spit/spat	we were spit/spat
you were spit/spat	you were spit/spat
he/she/it was spit/spat	they were spit/spat

• *The words were spat in utter contempt.*

COMPLEMENTS

spit force something [often, saliva]
from one's mouth

Rinse out your mouth and spit, please.
People who chew tobacco have to spit constantly.
I have such a bad taste in my mouth that I'm spitting
all the time.

spit be very angry

He was spitting angrily.
The defendant was spitting with sudden rage.

spit rain/snow lightly

It's spitting outside; you'd better wear a raincoat.

spit _____ force from one's mouth

OBJECT

The diner spit a **chicken bone** across the table.
Aaron accidentally spit a **mouthful of soda** all over the floor.

spit _____ throw out [liquid, fire]

OBJECT

The engine was spitting **oil**.
The pan was so hot that it spit **cooking oil** on my hand.
The bonfire was spitting **sparks** high into the night air.

spit _____ say/express angrily

OBJECT

The man spit **abuse** at the crowd.
He spat **an oath** and slammed the door.
The man spat **an incoherent warning** at the children.

PRESENT

I split we split
 you split you split
 he/she/it splits they split
 • *Pine always splits along the grain.*

PAST

I split we split
 you split you split
 he/she/it split they split
 • *We split the cost equally.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has split

PAST PERFECT ... had split

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am splitting we are splitting
 you are splitting you are splitting
 he/she/it is splitting they are splitting
 • *The couple next door is splitting.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was splitting we were splitting
 you were splitting you were splitting
 he/she/it was splitting they were splitting
 • *I was splitting enough wood to last all winter.*

FUTURE ... will split

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be splitting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have split

PAST PASSIVE

I was split we were split
 you were split you were split
 he/she/it was split they were split
 • *The prize was split among the winning contestants.*

COMPLEMENTS

split *separate/divide into parts*

My lips were splitting from the sun.
 The ice was heaving and splitting.
 The trail splits at the top of the ridge.
 The class split into three groups.

split *end a marriage/relationship*

My cousin and his wife are splitting after five years.
 Jayne got into a fight with her boyfriend and they decided to split.
 Do you think they will split after what happened?
 This issue could cause the Republican Party to split.

split _____ *cause to separate/divide into parts*

OBJECT

We split the **logs** for firewood.
 Would you split **the English muffins** and toast them?
 They split **the searchers** into small groups so they could cover more ground.

PASSIVE

Diamonds are still split by hand.
 The atom was first split in 1932.

split _____ *share/divide among participants*

OBJECT

We need to split **the workload** more fairly.
 Investors will split **the profits** in proportion to the size of their investment.
 Rhonda split **a pizza** with Stan.
 If we get the winning ticket, we will split **the prize** equally.
 Overtime hours must be split among all workers.
 The group split **what they had earned**.
 We will split **whatever we win**.
 They decided to split **however much money they get**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

PHRASAL VERBS

split SEP **up (into _____)** *divide (into [groups, etc.])*

He split the class up into three groups according to height.

split SEP **off** *separate*

The forum moderator split the topic off from the main thread.

split **off (from _____)** *separate (from [someone/something])*

Icebergs are splitting off from glaciers at an alarming rate.

PRESENT

I spread we spread
 you spread you spread
 he/she/it spreads they spread
 • *He spreads peanut butter on his bagels.*

PAST

I spread we spread
 you spread you spread
 he/she/it spread they spread
 • *We spread a blanket on the grass.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has spread

PAST PERFECT ... had spread

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am spreading we are spreading
 you are spreading you are spreading
 he/she/it is spreading they are spreading
 • *The city is spreading into the valley.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was spreading we were spreading
 you were spreading you were spreading
 he/she/it was spreading they were spreading
 • *They were spreading rumors about the senator.*

FUTURE ... will spread

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be spreading

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have spread

PAST PASSIVE

I was spread we were spread
 you were spread you were spread
 he/she/it was spread they were spread
 • *The seeds were spread by a mechanical applicator.*

COMPLEMENTS

spread *move/extend outward*

Bad news spreads like wildfire.
 The floodwater was spreading by the minute.
 Violence is spreading in much of the world.

spread _____ *extend [over/to an area]*
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The ripples spread **across the pond**.
 Elm disease has spread **through the upper Midwest**.
 The impact of deflation spread **throughout the economy**.
 The city is spreading **in all directions**.
 The forest fire spread **to several hilltop villages**.

spread _____ *cause to move/expand outward*
 OBJECT

He is always spreading **rumors**.
 The senator hopes to spread **the blame for the mistake**.
 Malaria is spread by one type of mosquito.

PASSIVE

spread _____ *open/stretch out*
 OBJECT

The bird spread **its wings**.

spread _____ *distribute*
 OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He spread **the map across the hood of the car**.
 Spread **the jam on every corner of the bread**.
 The eruption spread **dust over hundreds of square miles**.
 They spread **the payments over five years**.
 Protective cloths had been spread **across the floor**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

spread SEP **around** *publicize*

They spread the news around that
 her campaign staff had been fired.

spread out *scatter*

The rescuers spread out to search the mountainside.

EXPRESSIONS

spread it on thick *exaggerate praise/blame*

The car salesman was really spreading
 it on thick.

spread [oneself] too thin *do too many things at once*

Between work and volunteer activities, Emma has spread
 herself too thin.

PRESENT

I spring	we spring
you spring	you spring
he/she/it springs	they spring

• *He springs out of bed in the morning.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am springing	we are springing
you are springing	you are springing
he/she/it is springing	they are springing

• *Crocuses are springing up everywhere.*

PAST

I sprang/sprung	we sprang/sprung
you sprang/sprung	you sprang/sprung
he/she/it sprang/sprung	

• *The door sprang open.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was springing	we were springing
you were springing	you were springing
he/she/it was springing	they were springing

• *Dolphins were springing out of the water.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sprung

PAST PERFECT ... had sprung

FUTURE

... will spring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be springing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sprung

PAST PASSIVE

I was sprung	we were sprung
you were sprung	you were sprung
he/she/it was sprung	they were sprung

• *The trap was sprung by a raccoon.*

COMPLEMENTS

spring _____ jump/move suddenly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I sprang **out of my chair** and ran to the door.
The soldiers sprang **up** when the captain came into the room.
We sprang **to the ropes** before the boat could pull away.
The car sprang **forward**, nearly hitting us.
The car door sprang **open** and Fred jumped out.

spring _____ suddenly appear

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A dog suddenly sprang **out of the fog**.
Jack sprang **out the front door** and greeted us warmly.
The robbers sprang **out of nowhere**.
Tears sprang **from his eyes**.
A cry sprang **from her throat**.

spring _____ cause to snap shut

OBJECT

An opossum sprang **the trap**.

PHRASAL VERBS

spring for _____ pay for

spring up _____ begin, be started

spring up _____ begin to grow

I'll spring for a new coat for you.
A wonderful friendship sprang up between us.
A new fast-food restaurant sprang up on the corner.
Flowers and weeds are springing up in the garden.

EXPRESSIONS

spring a leak _____ begin to leak

spring into action _____ become suddenly active

spring to mind _____ be thought of

Our boat sprang a leak in the middle of the lake.

After Amber read his letter, she sprang into action.

Which president springs to mind when I say "father of our country"?

PRESENT

I stand we stand
 you stand you stand
 he/she/it stands they stand

• *The treasurer stands by the CEO.*

PAST

I stood we stood
 you stood you stood
 he/she/it stood they stood

• *We all stood for the national anthem.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stood

PAST PERFECT ... had stood

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am standing we are standing
 you are standing you are standing
 he/she/it is standing they are standing

• *I am standing in the checkout lane.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was standing we were standing
 you were standing you were standing
 he/she/it was standing they were standing

• *We were standing for hours at the reception.*

FUTURE ... will stand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be standing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stood

PAST PASSIVE

I was stood we were stood
 you were stood you were stood
 he/she/it was stood they were stood

• *The pictures were all stood along the wall.*

COMPLEMENTS

stand *be/get in an upright position*

Please stand.
 Everyone stood when the funeral procession went by.
 By the end of the game, we were all standing and cheering.

stand *remain undisturbed*
 [OF FOOD, LIQUID]

Let the tea leaves stand for a few minutes.
 The custard needs to stand until it is at room temperature.
 The mixture should stand until all the liquid is absorbed.

stand *remain as is*

The committee's original recommendation stands.
 The judge let the lower court's ruling stand.
 That tradition has stood since the school began.

stand _____ *cause to be in an upright position*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

She stood **the dolls against the dresser**.
 The librarian stood **the books on the shelf**.
 Stand **the children in front of a mirror**.
 Stand **the rugs in the corner**, please.
 We stood **the flagstaff in a big pot**.
 The palm plants were stood **along the garden wall**.

PASSIVE

stand _____ *be located*

ADVERB OF PLACE

The church stands **at the corner of Waterman and Kingshighway**.
 A rake and hoe stood **against the fence**.
 The train is standing **at the station**.
 He was standing **just outside the door**, waiting for us.
 The town stands **on a little hill overlooking the bay**.

stand _____ *step to and remain [in a certain place]*

ADVERB OF PLACE

Stand **over there**, please.
 I stood **to the side** and let them pass.
 We all stood **on the grass** so that the ambulance could get by.

stand _____ *be [in a certain condition]*

PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

He stood **firm in his opposition to the plan**.
 I stand **ready to help**.
 The house stood **empty** for many years.



stand _____ tolerate, endure [USUALLY USED IN QUESTIONS OR NEGATIVE STATEMENTS]

OBJECT

How do you stand **the pressure**?

I can't stand **the suspense**.

No one can stand **his superior attitude**.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

How can you stand **listening to that nonsense**?

Wine grapes can't stand **being in poorly drained soil**.

I can't stand **not knowing what happened**.

stand _____ be of a specified height

OBJECT

Tim stands **six foot four**.

The horse stands **15 hands at the withers**.

PHRASAL VERBS

stand apart/aside/back/off/etc.

stand in a specified position

Max stood aside and let the medics by.

We stood back so that we wouldn't get hurt.

stand around loiter, be idle

They stood around with their hands in their pockets.

stand at _____ be at a specified amount/
number

The bid stands at \$250.

Our team's record stands at 11–4.

stand by be near and ready if needed

He asked me to stand by in case his car wouldn't start.

stand by stand near but not involve oneself

Three people stood by and watched the robbery take place.

stand by _____ support, defend

She stood by her husband throughout his illness.

stand for _____ represent

"U.S.A." stands for "United States of America."

stand for _____ tolerate [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

We won't stand for your nonsense any longer.

stand in for _____ take the place of, act for

Would you stand in for me at next Tuesday's meeting?

stand out be distinctive

Because of his height, Don really stands out in a crowd.

stand over _____ keep close watch on

I can't get any work done if you're standing over me.

stand up prove to be true/good

This idea won't stand up under scrutiny.

stand **SEF** **up** fail to keep a date with

Lori stood him up again.

stand up for _____ support, defend

When Nancy was criticized, her coach stood up for her. My parents always stood up for immigrants' rights.

stand up to _____ resist, refuse to be treated badly by

The candidate stood up to the lies on talk radio.

EXPRESSIONS

stand a chance (of _____) have a chance of

Does your team stand a chance of winning?

stand corrected admit that one is wrong

I stand corrected; there are two *m*'s in *recommend*.

stand head and shoulders above _____
be far superior to

Their book stood head and shoulders above the competition.

stand in [someone's] way oppose/obstruct
[someone]

She beat every candidate who stood in her way to the nomination.

stand on [one's] own two feet
be independent, not need anyone's help

Son, it's time for you to get your own apartment and stand on your own two feet.

stand [one's] ground
maintain one's position while being attacked

The politician stood his ground in spite of accusations by the opposition party.

stand still for _____
tolerate [USUALLY NEGATIVE]

Senator Blather won't stand still for criticism of his immigration policy.

stand to reason
be sensible/reasonable

It stands to reason that interest rates are low in a recession.

PRESENT

I steal we steal
 you steal you steal
 he/she/it steals they steal

• *Our dog steals food from the cats' dishes.*

PAST

I stole we stole
 you stole you stole
 he/she/it stole they stole

• *Someone stole my wallet at the gym.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stolen

PAST PERFECT ... had stolen

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stealing we are stealing
 you are stealing you are stealing
 he/she/it is stealing they are stealing

• *I am stealing an idea from you—okay?*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stealing we were stealing
 you were stealing you were stealing
 he/she/it was stealing they were stealing

• *They were stealing into the kitchen for cookies.*

FUTURE ... will steal

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stealing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stolen

PAST PASSIVE

I was stolen we were stolen
 you were stolen you were stolen
 he/she/it was stolen they were stolen

• *The car was stolen right out of the garage.*

COMPLEMENTS

steal take something that doesn't belong to one without paying for it / without permission

"Thou shalt not steal." [BIBLE]
 Fagin forced the children to steal.
 Even though he was starving, Oliver refused to steal.

steal _____ take without paying for / without permission

OBJECT

Somebody stole **my son's bicycle**.
 He claimed that they had stolen **his idea**.
 iPods are stolen out of backpacks every day.

PASSIVE

steal _____ take/borrow while acknowledging the fact [OFTEN USED HUMOROUSLY]

OBJECT

Can I steal **your husband** for a few minutes?
 I need to steal **a few minutes of your time**.
 Can I steal **your chair**?

steal _____ move quietly/secretly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The thieves stole **into the garage** and took some tools.
 We stole **into the boss's office** for a surprise birthday party.
 The cavalry stole **behind Union lines** and attacked from the rear.

steal _____ get/win in a tricky manner

OBJECT

Sam felt that Bob had stolen **Martha's affections**.

steal _____ take secretly and slyly

OBJECT

He managed to steal **a look at the classified documents**.
 I stole **a kiss** when we had driven for a mile.

PHRASAL VERBS

steal away/down/in/out/up/etc. move quietly/secretly in a specified direction

My aunt stole away and cried.

EXPRESSIONS

steal [someone's] thunder say/do what [someone else] intended to say/do, thereby lessening his/her impact

Her opponent stole her thunder by appearing on TV an hour before she did.

steal the show receive more attention than anyone else at an event

A young tap dancer named Dulé Hill stole the show.

PRESENT

I stick we stick
 you stick you stick
 he/she/it sticks they stick

• *The store sticks labels on fruit.*

PAST

I stuck we stuck
 you stuck you stuck
 he/she/it stuck they stuck

• *A nurse stuck a bandage on Lynda's knee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stuck

PAST PERFECT ... had stuck

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sticking we are sticking
 you are sticking you are sticking
 he/she/it is sticking they are sticking

• *The glue isn't sticking very well.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sticking we were sticking
 you were sticking you were sticking
 he/she/it was sticking they were sticking

• *My shoes were sticking to the floor.*

FUTURE

... will stick

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be sticking

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have stuck

PAST PASSIVE

I was stuck we were stuck
 you were stuck you were stuck
 he/she/it was stuck they were stuck

• *A note was stuck on my door while I was gone.*

COMPLEMENTS

stick remain fixed in place

The drawer is still sticking.
 Our wheels stuck in the soft earth.
 I'm afraid the proposal is stuck in committee.
 The transmission has stuck in first gear.
 If you throw enough dirt at somebody, some of it will stick.
 Snow was sticking on the ground.
 Our pants were sticking to the plastic seats.

stick _____ attach, fasten, fix

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We stuck **a patch on the tire**.
 I stuck **some pictures on the wall**.
 They stuck **the interns in a dingy basement office**.
 He was stuck **in a dead-end job**.

PASSIVE

stick _____ poke, pierce, thrust

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The nurse stuck **a thermometer in his mouth**.
 The cowboy stuck **a cigarette behind his ear**.
 The little boy stuck **a pin into the balloon**.
 The workers stuck **their hands in their pockets**.
 Political signs had been stuck **on the lawn**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

stick down/in/out/up/etc. extend in a specified position

stick SEP **away/back/down/in/on/out/up/etc.** thrust/attach in a specified location

stick around remain nearby

stick by _____ remain loyal to

stick out be distinctive

stick SEP **out** endure

stick to _____ adhere to

stick SEP **up** rob

stick up for _____ defend

My toes were sticking out from under the quilt.
 The lid was sticking up on the jewelry box.
 Margaret stuck the report back in the drawer.
 I'll stick the stamps on at the post office.
 He stuck his tongue out at the teacher.
 I asked Barb to stick around until I started my car.
 Sara stuck by him through thick and thin.
 That lime green shirt of his really sticks out.
 Bob quit his new job after a week; he couldn't stick it out.
 Everyone should stick to the point being discussed.
 Two masked men stuck up a gas station last night.
 Mom always stuck up for us kids.

PRESENT

I sting we sting
 you sting you sting
 he/she/it stings they sting
 • *That antiseptic really stings.*

PAST

I stung we stung
 you stung you stung
 he/she/it stung they stung
 • *The smoke from the grill stung our eyes.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stung

PAST PERFECT ... had stung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stinging we are stinging
 you are stinging you are stinging
 he/she/it is stinging they are stinging
 • *My hands are still stinging.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinging we were stinging
 you were stinging you were stinging
 he/she/it was stinging they were stinging
 • *Sweat bees were stinging everyone at the picnic.*

FUTURE ... will sting

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stung

PAST PASSIVE

I was stung we were stung
 you were stung you were stung
 he/she/it was stung they were stung
 • *The swimmers were stung by jellyfish.*

COMPLEMENTS

- sting** hurt by pricking/piercing the skin Wasps will sting if you get too close to their nest.
 Careful—those plants sting if you even brush them.
 The insects sting when the wind dies down.
- sting** feel a sharp tingling/burning pain My skin is stinging.
 Our throats were stinging from the exhaust.
 My hands stung from the vibrations.
- sting** cause emotional pain His criticisms stung at first.
 Malicious gossip stings terribly.
 Man, what he said really stings!
- sting** _____ hurt by pricking/piercing the skin of
 OBJECT A bee just stung **me**.
 PASSIVE The kids who were playing in the sandbox were stung by ants.
- sting** _____ cause a sharp tingling/burning pain to
 OBJECT The medicine stung **my throat**.
 The sunblock stung **my eyes**.
 The cold stung **my ears and hands**.
 PASSIVE My ears and hands were stung by the cold.
- sting** _____ cause emotional pain to
 OBJECT Unjust criticism stings **a writer**.
 Being ridiculed would sting **anyone**.
 PASSIVE I was stung by her malicious attack.
 We were stung by how quickly they reacted.

PRESENT

I stink	we stink
you stink	you stink
he/she/it stinks	they stink

• *The barn really stinks.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stinking	we are stinking
you are stinking	you are stinking
he/she/it is stinking	they are stinking

• *The durian is stinking up our apartment.*

PAST

I stank/stunk	we stank/stunk
you stank/stunk	you stank/stunk
he/she/it stank/stunk	they stank/stunk

• *The whole economic situation stank.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stinking	we were stinking
you were stinking	you were stinking
he/she/it was stinking	they were stinking

• *The dead skunk was stinking to high heaven.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stunk

PAST PERFECT ... had stunk

FUTURE ... will stink

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have stunk

PAST PASSIVE

Stink is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

stink *give off a strong, unpleasant smell*

The alley stank like an open sewer.
When tissue swells and stinks, it may be a sign of gangrene.
His breath stank from cheap tobacco.
You need to take out the garbage before it starts to stink.

stink *be worthless / very bad*

The movie stinks. No one liked it.
The proposed merger stinks and will probably end up in court.
I think the plan stinks and should be junked.
The company's reputation stinks because of what they did.

PHRASAL VERBS

stink SEP **up** *fill with a strong, unpleasant smell*

Will hamsters stink up the house?

EXPRESSIONS

stink up the joint/place *perform very badly*

Our team really stunk up the joint tonight.

stink to high heaven *give off an extremely unpleasant smell*

When broccoli goes bad, it stinks to high heaven.

- REGULAR
- IRREGULAR

strew | strews · strewed · have strewed
 strew | strews · strewed · have strewn

strew

155

PRESENT

I strew	we strew
you strew	you strew
he/she/it strews	they strew

• *A flower girl strews petals down the aisle.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am strewing	we are strewing
you are strewing	you are strewing
he/she/it is strewing	they are strewing

• *The wind is strewing leaves on the patio.*

PAST

I strewed	we strewed
you strewed	you strewed
he/she/it strewed	they strewed

• *We strewed the dance floor with chalk.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was strewing	we were strewing
you were strewing	you were strewing
he/she/it was strewing	they were strewing

• *The woman was strewing flowers on his grave.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has strewn

PAST PERFECT ... had strewn

FUTURE ... will strew

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be strewing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have strewn

PAST PASSIVE

—	—
—	—
it was strewn	they were strewn

• *The puppy's food was strewn all around the kitchen.*

COMPLEMENTS

strew _____ scatter, spread untidily

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

The storm had strewn **paper and trash** *everywhere*.
 The rebels were strewing **mines** *throughout the valley*.
 An explosion strew **concrete and metal** *over a four-block area*.

PASSIVE

Newspapers and magazines were strewn *around the living room*.

strew _____ be scattered/littered over

OBJECT

A carpet of leaves strewed **the pathway**, making it impossible to see.
 Rusting cars and trucks strewed **the front yard**.

strew _____ cover [a surface] by scattering [with something]

OBJECT + with OBJECT

His parents have strewn **their dining room table** *with potted plants*.
 Our neighbors are strewing **their lawn** *with wrought iron furniture*.
 The author strewed **her novel** *with clues to the killer's identity*.

PASSIVE

The beach was strewn *with rotting wood*.

PRESENT

I stride	we stride
you stride	you stride
he/she/it strides	they stride

• *He strides in like he is on a mission.*

PAST

I strode	we strode
you strode	you strode
he/she/it strode	they strode

• *The cowboys strode into the town square.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has stridden

PAST PERFECT ... had stridden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striding	we are striding
you are striding	you are striding
he/she/it is striding	they are striding

• *The horses are striding along at a fast clip now.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striding	we were striding
you were striding	you were striding
he/she/it was striding	they were striding

• *They were striding as though they were on parade.*

FUTURE

... will stride

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be striding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have stridden

PAST PASSIVE

Stride is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

stride *walk with long steps*

He doesn't walk, he strides.

The boys were pretending to stride like soldiers.

He was striding so fast that he was almost running.

stride _____ *walk briskly*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

He strode **across the room** in two quick steps and jerked open the door.

They strode angrily **down the street and into the mayor's office**.

The delegation strode **past us**, grim faced, not looking to the left or right.

PHRASAL VERBS

stride along/away/down/in/out/up/etc. *stride in a specified direction*

He was striding along, muttering to himself.

Leon glared at the boss, then strode away.

The captain strode up and shook my hand.

PRESENT

I strike we strike
you strike you strike
he/she/it strikes they strike
• *The idea strikes us as promising.*

PAST

I struck we struck
you struck you struck
he/she/it struck they struck
• *She struck her foot on a chair.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has struck/stricken

PAST PERFECT ... had struck/stricken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am striking we are striking
you are striking you are striking
he/she/it is striking they are striking
• *The flu is striking everyone.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striking we were striking
you were striking you were striking
he/she/it was striking they were striking
• *The union was striking at midnight.*

FUTURE

... will strike

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be striking

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have struck/stricken

PAST PASSIVE

I was struck/stricken we were struck/stricken
you were struck/stricken you were struck/stricken
he/she/it was struck/stricken they were struck/stricken
• *He was suddenly struck by a brilliant idea.*

COMPLEMENTS

strike *attack, cause sudden damage/*
injury

An earthquake struck this morning
in northern California.
Disaster struck when the ferry capsized in heavy seas.
The killer has struck again.
Many snakes hiss before they strike.

strike *refuse to work until one's*
demands are met

The maintenance workers voted to strike.
We will strike if our demands are not met.
They are striking for better health benefits.

strike _____ *hit forcefully*
OBJECT

A falling tree limb struck **me** on the shoulder.
The van struck **several parked cars**.
He struck **the ball** with his head.
Sunshine struck **the mirror**, temporarily blinding me.
The Pinkston family was struck by tragedy today.
We were all struck by the coincidence.

PASSIVE

strike _____ *occur to*
OBJECT

A great idea just struck **me**.
The solution to the problem struck **him**.
It struck **us that our problem had been solved**.
It strikes **me that you are taking an unnecessary risk**.
It struck **everyone that it was getting very late**.

it + strike + OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE NOUN

NOTE: The predicate noun refers to the subject, not the object.

The attack struck **the policeman as a suicide bombing**.
He struck **her as an honest man**.
His scheme struck **us as a stupid idea**.

OBJECT + *as* PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

NOTE: The predicate adjective refers to the subject, not the object.

Thomas struck **her as nice but a little strange**.
The proposal struck **me as promising**.
Their children struck **us as well-behaved**.



strike _____ reach/achieve [an agreement, compromise]

OBJECT

The two sides finally struck **a deal**.
You must strike **the right balance between compassion and assertiveness**.

PASSIVE

A compromise on the budget was finally struck.

PHRASAL VERBS

strike back/down/out attack in a specified direction

The hero struck back with his mighty sword.

strike SEP **back/down/out** hit in a specified direction

Roger struck Steve down with a blow to the head.

strike SEP **down** invalidate [a law]

The Supreme Court struck down the gay marriage ban as unconstitutional.

strike SEP **off** remove

The secretary struck off the names of those who hadn't paid dues.

strike off/out (for _____) set out (to [someplace])

Thousands struck out for California in search of gold.

strike on _____ realize suddenly

The author struck on the idea of setting the novel in colonial America.

strike out fail

Brandy struck out trying to convince the boss to give her a raise.

strike SEP **up** begin

Ben struck up a conversation with the receptionist. Sadie and Sally struck up a friendship at school.

EXPRESSIONS

strike a balance (between _____) compromise (between [two things])

She manages to strike a balance between her work and her family.

strike a bargain/deal reach agreement

The union and the company struck a bargain at the eleventh hour.

strike a chord (with _____) sound familiar to [someone]

Those words strike a chord with me; what song are they from?

strike a happy medium find a satisfactory compromise

She speaks French and I speak English, so we struck a happy medium and watched a French film with English subtitles.

strike a nerve cause a strong negative reaction

Your insensitive comment about immigration really struck a nerve.

strike _____ funny seem humorous/odd to

It strikes me funny that they dropped charges against the politician.

strike home make sense

His advice to save for a rainy day really strikes home.

strike it rich become suddenly wealthy

They struck it rich in the real estate business.

strike [one, two, ... twelve / midnight] [OF A CLOCK] indicate the hour by a certain number of sounds

The clock struck one, and the mouse ran down. [NURSERY RHYME]

strike pay dirt become suddenly successful

The Mars rover has struck pay dirt: It has discovered evidence of water on the planet.

Miss Elizabeth Bennet struck Mr. Darcy's fancy.

top
30
verb

strike [someone's] fancy appeal to [someone]

strike while the iron is hot do something while one has the opportunity

The economy is booming, and the board recommends that the company strike while the iron is hot.

PRESENT

I string we string
 you string you string
 he/she/it strings they string
 • *He strings Christmas lights in the trees.*

PAST

I strung we strung
 you strung you strung
 he/she/it strung they strung
 • *I strung the bows for the children.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has strung

PAST PERFECT ... had strung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am stringing we are stringing
 you are stringing you are stringing
 he/she/it is stringing they are stringing
 • *The kids are stringing beads.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was stringing we were stringing
 you were stringing you were stringing
 he/she/it was stringing they were stringing
 • *We were stringing shells for a wall hanging.*

FUTURE ... will string

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be stringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have strung

PAST PASSIVE

I was strung we were strung
 you were strung you were strung
 he/she/it was strung they were strung
 • *My tennis racket was strung too tight.*

COMPLEMENTS

string _____ hang/stretch [in a line]
 OBJECT

We used to string **popcorn and cranberries** on our Christmas tree.
 The fishermen strung **lines** in the channel.
 The decorating committee wanted to string **lanterns** in the hall.
 A trip wire had been strung across the path.

PASSIVE

string _____ thread (on a line/cord)
 OBJECT

Kids love to string **different shapes of uncooked pasta**.
 When we catch fish, we string **them** on a line.
 The beads were strung to make simple necklaces.

PASSIVE

string _____ put strings on [a racket, bow, musical instrument]
 OBJECT

You can't string **a tennis racket** by hand.
 It takes a great deal of strength to string **a powerful bow**.
 The instruments were all strung by a professional musician.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

string SEP **along** keep [someone] hoping for romance / a reward

Jenny strung Reggie along for several months before telling him to get lost.
 He strings employees along by promising raises that they never get.

string SEP **out** prolong

The professor was stringing out his lecture on quantum gravity.

string SEP **up** hang by the neck

An angry mob strung the cattle thieves up in the town square.

PRESENT

I strive	we strive
you strive	you strive
he/she/it strives	they strive

• *He strives to do his very best.*

PAST

I strove	we strove
you strove	you strove
he/she/it strove	they strove

• *We strove to get the job finished on time.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has striven**PAST PERFECT** ... had striven**PRESENT PROGRESSIVE**

I am striving	we are striving
you are striving	you are striving
he/she/it is striving	they are striving

• *He is striving to succeed.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was striving	we were striving
you were striving	you were striving
he/she/it was striving	they were striving

• *Everyone was striving to beat the deadline.*

FUTURE ... will strive**FUTURE PROGRESSIVE** ... will be striving**FUTURE PERFECT** ... will have striven**PAST PASSIVE**

Strive is never used in the passive voice.

COMPLEMENTS

strive _____ *make a great effort, try very hard*

INFINITIVE

You must always strive **to improve yourself.**

We always strove **to get the kids to school on time.**

Successful companies constantly strive **to make their products better.**

If you don't strive **to succeed**, you will surely fail in the long run.

The whole team was striving **to be the best in the league.**

strive _____ *fight, struggle*

for OBJECT

We strive **for peace and freedom.**

against OBJECT

The activists are striving **against poverty and injustice.**

PRESENT

I swear we swear
 you swear you swear
 he/she/it swears they swear

• *He swears that he knew nothing about it.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swearing we are swearing
 you are swearing you are swearing
 he/she/it is swearing they are swearing

• *They are swearing that they are innocent.*

PAST

I swore we swore
 you swore you swore
 he/she/it swore they swore

• *The witness swore to tell the truth.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swearing we were swearing
 you were swearing you were swearing
 he/she/it was swearing they were swearing

• *The soldiers were swearing and yelling at us.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sworn

PAST PERFECT ... had sworn

FUTURE ... will swear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sworn

PAST PASSIVE

I was sworn we were sworn
 you were sworn you were sworn
 he/she/it was sworn they were sworn

• *The appropriate oaths were sworn during the ceremony.*

COMPLEMENTS

swear *use offensive language, usually in anger*

He swore under his breath.
 Please don't swear around the children.
 It was enough to make one swear!

swear _____ *promise, vow, pledge, state very seriously*

OBJECT

I swore **a solemn promise**.
 Peter swore **his undying love to Héloïse**.
 The nobles all swore **their allegiance to the king**.
 The oath was sworn and witnessed.

PASSIVE

INFINITIVE

I swear **to do it**.
 Criminals always swear **to never commit another crime**.
 He swears **to mend the error of his ways**.
 "I swear **to tell the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the truth**." [COMMON COURTROOM OATH]

THAT-CLAUSE

I swear **that we were not the cause of the accident**.
 The defendant swore **that he only shot in self-defense**.
 The kids all swore **that they didn't let the dog out**.
 "I do solemnly swear **that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States...**" [OATH OF OFFICE]

PHRASAL VERBS

swear at _____ *curse at*

He swore at me when I told him to leave the room.

swear by _____ *have great faith in*

Trudy swears by yoga.

swear SEP **in** _____ *administer an oath to*

The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court swears in the President of the United States.

The witness was sworn in by the bailiff.

swear off _____ *promise to quit*

Randi has sworn off dieting.

EXPRESSIONS

swear _____ *to secrecy cause to promise not to repeat a secret*

Annette swore me to secrecy about her background.

swear to it *be absolutely certain about something [USUALLY NEGATIVE]*

I wouldn't swear to it, but I think Elvis is still alive.

PRESENT

I sweat we sweat
 you sweat you sweat
 he/she/it sweats they sweat
 • *He sweats heavily when he exercises.*

PAST

I sweat we sweat
 you sweat you sweat
 he/she/it sweat they sweat
 • *They sweat so much they felt faint.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has sweat

PAST PERFECT ... had sweat

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweating we are sweating
 you are sweating you are sweating
 he/she/it is sweating they are sweating
 • *I am really sweating tomorrow's exam.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweating we were sweating
 you were sweating you were sweating
 he/she/it was sweating they were sweating
 • *We were all sweating by the time we finished.*

FUTURE

... will sweat

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sweating

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have sweat

PAST PASSIVE

I was sweat we were sweat
 you were sweat you were sweat
 he/she/it was sweat they were sweat

• *The wrestlers were sweat until they got down to 190 pounds.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweat *perspire*

I always sweat when I work out.
 Everyone in the hot office was sweating like crazy.
 He sweats so much that he has to change his clothes after lunch.

sweat *form drops of water on its surface*

The bottles of water began to sweat.
 The plaster walls were actually sweating in the humid air.
 The cheese is sweating and needs to be refrigerated.

sweat *be worried/nervous*

The police let him sweat overnight.
 Don't sweat. Everything will be okay.
 They are going to make him sweat until he tells what happened.

sweat _____ *cause to perspire through exertion*

OBJECT

The coach wants to sweat **the football players** at every practice.
 The training session had sweat **everybody**.

PASSIVE

The horses were sweat by the trainers and then allowed to slowly cool off.

sweat _____ *be worried/nervous about*

OBJECT

Noel was sweating **the job interview**.
 Everyone sweats **the final exam**.

over OBJECT

Maureen sweat **over her English literature grade**.
 Ruth was sweating **over the upcoming conference in Montreal**.

sweat _____ *work very hard on*

over OBJECT

The winner sweat **over the wording of his acceptance speech**.
 Jeffrey sweat all last week **over his essay**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweat SEP **off** *lose [an amount of weight] by exercising*

Angie sweat off 22 pounds in two months.

EXPRESSIONS

sweat blood *work very hard*

She was willing to sweat blood for a spot on the Olympic team.

sweat bullets *be extremely worried/nervous*

Poor Leroy was sweating bullets outside the principal's office.

PRESENT

I sweep we sweep
 you sweep you sweep
 he/she/it sweeps they sweep
 • *He sweeps the leaves into the gutter.*

PAST

I swept we swept
 you swept you swept
 he/she/it swept they swept
 • *The Giants swept the three-game series.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swept

PAST PERFECT ... had swept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am sweeping we are sweeping
 you are sweeping you are sweeping
 he/she/it is sweeping they are sweeping
 • *She is sweeping the front porch.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was sweeping we were sweeping
 you were sweeping you were sweeping
 he/she/it was sweeping they were sweeping
 • *The incoming tide was sweeping across the bay.*

FUTURE ... will sweep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be sweeping

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swept

PAST PASSIVE

I was swept we were swept
 you were swept you were swept
 he/she/it was swept they were swept
 • *The room was swept this morning.*

COMPLEMENTS

sweep _____ clean with a broom/brush

OBJECT

You need to sweep **the kitchen floor**.

I'll sweep **the carpet** in the entryway.

The garage has already been swept.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ clear away

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The archaeologist carefully swept **dirt from the bones**.

The waiter swept **the crumbs onto a tray**.

The trash had been swept **into a pile in the corner**.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ carry along in a continuous motion

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The cook swept **a greasy cloth over the lunch counter**.

The current swept **the boat onto the rocks**.

The mud slide swept **the house off its foundation**.

We were swept **out to sea** by the offshore winds.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ pass over in a continuous motion

OBJECT

The guard's eyes swept **the room**.

The politician's glance swept **the crowd**.

sweep _____ move quickly

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The rumor swept **through the crowd**.

A gust of rain swept **down the empty street**.

sweep _____ search

OBJECT

The volunteers swept **the woods**, looking for the lost children.

Technicians swept **the office** for hidden electronic devices.

The crime scene has already been swept.

PASSIVE

sweep _____ win all that can be won in

OBJECT

Our party swept **the fall election**.

PHRASAL VERBS

sweep along/down/in/off/out/past/up/etc. sweep in a specified direction

The queen swept in with all her attendants.

The motorcade swept past.

sweep SEP **along/aside/away/back/in/off/out/past/up/etc.** sweep [something] in a specified direction

The Russian revolution swept the old system away overnight.

His election swept in a host of governmental reforms.

The tornado swept up everything in its path.

PRESENT

I swell	we swell
you swell	you swell
he/she/it swells	they swell

• *My ankles swell if I stand too long.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swelling	we are swelling
you are swelling	you are swelling
he/she/it is swelling	they are swelling

• *The wood is swelling from all the moisture.*

PAST

I swelled	we swelled
you swelled	you swelled
he/she/it swelled	they swelled

• *The sails swelled in the wind.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swelling	we were swelling
you were swelling	you were swelling
he/she/it was swelling	they were swelling

• *Naturally, her parents were swelling with pride.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swollen

PAST PERFECT ... had swollen

FUTURE ... will swell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swelling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swollen

PAST PASSIVE

I was swollen	we were swollen
you were swollen	you were swollen
he/she/it was swollen	they were swollen

• *The river was swollen by weeks of rain.*

COMPLEMENTS

swell *become larger/stronger, expand*

My hands swelled from the heat.

The crowd in front of the gate was swelling by the minute.

The orchestra music was swelling and the lights dimmed.

The balloon swelled and began to lift.

swell _____ *cause to become larger/stronger, cause to expand*

OBJECT

The snowmelt had swollen **all the lakes**.The bad news swelled **the rumors about layoffs**.The pump quickly swelled **the balloons** to full size.

My lymph nodes were swollen.

PASSIVE

swell _____ *become filled [with an emotion]*

with OBJECT

Ebenezer's heart swelled **with the Christmas spirit**.Tiny Tim swelled **with gratitude**.The cyclist was swelling **with confidence** after winning the Tour de France.

PRESENT

I swim we swim
 you swim you swim
 he/she/it swims they swim
 • *He swims three times a week.*

PAST

I swam we swam
 you swam you swam
 he/she/it swam they swam
 • *I swam competitively in college.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swum

PAST PERFECT ... had swum

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swimming we are swimming
 you are swimming you are swimming
 he/she/it is swimming they are swimming
 • *The kids are swimming in the pool.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swimming we were swimming
 you were swimming you were swimming
 he/she/it was swimming they were swimming
 • *My head was swimming from her perfume.*

FUTURE ... will swim

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swimming

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swum

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was swum they were swum
 • *The English Channel was first swum in 1875.*

COMPLEMENTS

swim travel through water by moving one's arms and legs

Look at me! I'm swimming.
 Do you know how to swim?
 I could swim before I could ride a bicycle.

swim be dizzy

The cocktails make my head swim.
 After the accident, my head swam and my ears rang.
 They gave me so many different directions that my head was swimming.

swim _____ travel through water by moving one's arms and legs
 ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Let's swim **out to the reef**.
 The fish swam **into the net**.
 We had swum **clear across the lake**.
 The kids like to swim **under the dock**.

swim _____ cross by swimming
 OBJECT

Salmon can swim **most of the Columbia River**.
 A few people have swum **the Strait of Messina**.
 The kids are trying to swim **the length of the pool** under water.

swim _____ seem to be whirling
 ADVERB OF PLACE

After he drank the punch, the room swam **before his eyes**.

swim _____ be completely covered with [USED ONLY IN THE PROGRESSIVE TENSES]
 ADVERB OF PLACE

The lettuce was practically swimming **in salad dressing**.

PHRASAL VERBS

swim along/around/away/in/off/out/up/etc. swim in a specified direction

The kids were swimming around in the pond.
 After we fed the dolphins, they swam off.

EXPRESSIONS

sink or swim fail or succeed

Donna has a new job, and we are wondering if she will sink or swim.

swim against the current/tide act in a way opposite to others

I swam against the tide in high school—and often got punished for it.

PRESENT

I swing we swing
you swing you swing
he/she/it swings they swing

• *Watch out—the door swings toward you.*

PAST

I swung we swung
you swung you swung
he/she/it swung they swung

• *He swung his racket and missed.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has swung

PAST PERFECT ... had swung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am swinging we are swinging
you are swinging you are swinging
he/she/it is swinging they are swinging

• *You are swinging the bat too late.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was swinging we were swinging
you were swinging you were swinging
he/she/it was swinging they were swinging

• *The kids were swinging on vines.*

FUTURE

... will swing

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be swinging

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have swung

PAST PASSIVE

I was swung we were swung
you were swung you were swung
he/she/it was swung they were swung

• *The heavy beam was swung into place.*

COMPLEMENTS

swing *sway/rock back and forth*

The gate was swinging in the wind.

The earthquake caused the chandeliers to swing.

The dancers were swinging in time to the music.

swing *change suddenly*

His moods were swinging more and more wildly.

Opinion polls were swinging all over the map.

swing *strike at something in a sweeping motion*

The batter swings and misses.

The tired boxers were swinging wildly.

A good golfer swings with his hips, not just with his arms.

swing _____ *move ([something]) in a sweeping motion*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The cowboy swung **into the saddle**.

The children swung **onto the wagon**.

I swung **into the driver's seat**.

OBJECT

He swung **the bat** and drove the ball into left field.

Biff swung **a punch** when the referee wasn't looking.

He swung **the golf club** and topped the ball.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

I swung **my leg over the top rail** and jumped.

Larry swung **his suitcase onto the bed**.

She swung **her arm around my shoulder**.

The kids swung **the rope over a limb**.

swing _____ *influence decisively*

OBJECT

The senator thought his ad could swing **the election**.

We hoped to swing **enough undecided voters** to win.

PHRASAL VERBS

swing around/down/in/off/out/etc.

swing in a specified direction

The cowboy swung down from the saddle.

The path swings off to the right at the top of the hill.

swing SEP **around/down/in/off/out/etc.**

swing [something] in a specified direction

The knight swung his sword around, and everyone stepped back.

swing by/over *visit briefly*

Susan will swing by if she has a chance.

swing by/over _____ *visit briefly*

I'll swing by Grandma's on the way to the store.

Can you swing over to the grocery and buy some milk?

PRESENT

I take we take
 you take you take
 he/she/it takes they take

• *He always takes the bus to work.*

PAST

I took we took
 you took you took
 he/she/it took they took

• *Someone took the last cup of coffee.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has taken

PAST PERFECT ... had taken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am taking we are taking
 you are taking you are taking
 he/she/it is taking they are taking

• *He is taking a long time.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was taking we were taking
 you were taking you were taking
 he/she/it was taking they were taking

• *We were taking the bus to New York.*

FUTURE ... will take

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be taking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have taken

PAST PASSIVE

I was taken we were taken
 you were taken you were taken
 he/she/it was taken they were taken

• *All of the seats were already taken.*

COMPLEMENTS

take _____ grasp, take possession of

OBJECT

PASSIVE

He took **his daughter's hand**.

Our ID cards were taken by the police.

take _____ get, obtain

OBJECT

Frank took **a job at the radio station**.

Gerry took **a jar of olives** from the refrigerator.

take _____ carry, transport

OBJECT

You should always take **your passport** when you travel.

Take **an umbrella** in case it rains.

Can you take **the kids** with you?

I usually take **my lunch**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Would you take **these books to the library?**

Amos took **the package to the post office**.

This bus takes **riders to the stadium**.

take _____ bring, lead

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

Bill is taking **Fran to the dance**.

This path takes **you to the top of Buttimer Hill**.

take _____ travel by [a vehicle, route]

OBJECT (+ ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM)

We can take **the elevator or the stairs**—you choose.

My parents once took **the Queen Mary**.

Let's take **the scenic route**.

We took **Route 66 from Chicago to Los Angeles**.

The kids took **a shortcut through the woods**.

They took **the bus home**.

take _____ move to [a position]

OBJECT

Gentlemen, please take **your seats**.

The two teams are taking **the field**.

take _____ engage in [an activity]

OBJECT

Let's take **a 10-minute break**.

Thomas always takes **an afternoon nap**.

We took **a nice walk in the park**.

I took **a class in income tax preparation**.



take _____ eat, drink, swallow

OBJECT

take _____ capture, win

OBJECT

take _____ subscribe to, rent

OBJECT

take _____ steal

OBJECT

take _____ require, use up

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

take _____ endure, suffer

OBJECT

take _____ make by photography

OBJECT

take _____ interpret

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

I'll take **a black coffee and two donuts**, please.

I took **an aspirin** for my headache.

After a brief fight, the soldiers took **the fort**.

The Cards took **three out of four games** from the Mets.

They take **several newspapers and magazines**.

We took **an apartment in the city**.

Somebody took **my wallet**.

People often take **newspapers** without paying for them.

It took **a long time to repair the leak**.

It takes **\$50 to fill the truck with gas**.

They took **two days to drive to Dallas**.

It takes **a lot of courage to go skydiving**.

Football players take **a lot of physical punishment**.

I can't take **this heat and humidity**.

Uncle Cecil took **pictures** during the family reunion.

She took **my joke seriously**.

PHRASAL VERBS

take SEP **along/aside/away/down/in/out/up/etc.** bring/carry/lead/transport in a specified direction

take SEP **down** write down, record

take SEP **down** dismantle

take SEP **for** mistake for

take **in** _____ attend, visit

take SEP **in** give shelter to

take **off** leave, depart

take **off** become very active/successful

take SEP **off** remove [clothing, etc.]

take SEP **off** deduct

take SEP **on** hire

take SEP **on** undertake

take SEP **out** remove

take SEP **over**
begin managing

take **to** _____
become fond of

take **up** _____
fill, occupy

take SEP **up**
become interested in

Grandmother took us along to the store.

The elevator takes you down to the parking garage.

The officer took down his address and phone number.

Volunteers took the political signs down afterwards.

Betty took me for my older brother.

We could eat at Lombardo's and take in a movie.

Today we'll take in the zoo and the art museum.

My husband takes in stray cats from the neighborhood.

Our plane will take off at 3:05 P.M.

Sales of used cars have taken off like a rocket.

The players took off their helmets.

The dealer took 50% off because the table was scratched.

My company took 30 new employees on in March.

Sorry, I just can't take on another project.

The surgeon took Dad's gallbladder out.

A recent college graduate took over the programming department.

Khalil has really taken to calligraphy.

Susan has taken to Leonard in a big way.

Your printing presses are taking up the whole basement!

Meetings took up the governor's entire afternoon.

Stephanie has taken up knitting.

PRESENT

I teach we teach
 you teach you teach
 he/she/it teaches they teach
 • *He teaches computer science.*

PAST

I taught we taught
 you taught you taught
 he/she/it taught they taught
 • *I taught in Spain for a year.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has taught

PAST PERFECT ... had taught

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am teaching we are teaching
 you are teaching you are teaching
 he/she/it is teaching they are teaching
 • *I am teaching Introduction to Physics again.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was teaching we were teaching
 you were teaching you were teaching
 he/she/it was teaching they were teaching
 • *They were teaching him to play baseball.*

FUTURE ... will teach

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be teaching

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have taught

PAST PASSIVE

I was taught we were taught
 you were taught you were taught
 he/she/it was taught they were taught
 • *English was taught beginning in the earliest grades.*

COMPLEMENTS

teach instruct professionally

I have been teaching for ten years.
 Her sister teaches at Osaka University.
 I would like to teach.

teach _____ provide training/instruction in [a skill, topic]

OBJECT

He teaches **martial arts**.
 I would like to teach **English**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

Experience teaches **moderation in all things**.
 She taught **them the names of the constellations**.
 He taught **first-year students world history**.
 I taught **myself the basics of geometry**.

to PARAPHRASE

She taught **the names of the constellations to them**.
 He taught **world history to first-year students**.
 I taught **the basics of geometry to myself**.

teach _____ provide training/instruction to

OBJECT

Kathy teaches **seventh graders**.
 She only teaches **graduate students**.
 He teaches **management trainees**.

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I taught **the kids to drive**.
 The army taught **them to be disciplined**.

PASSIVE

We were taught **to think for ourselves**.

(OBJECT +) WH-INFINITIVE

Their religion teaches **how to act**.
 The class teaches **students how to write a résumé**.
 The book taught **investors what to look for in a stock**.

teach _____ provide [a particular philosophy/knowledge] to

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

History teaches **that the pen is mightier than the sword**.
 My parents taught **us that hard work never hurt anyone**.
 The instructor taught **the class that a 60-40 mixture of stocks and bonds is best**.

EXPRESSIONS

teach _____ a lesson show [someone] the correct way to behave

His mother taught him a lesson on the value of money by making him work for his allowance.

PRESENT

I tear we tear
you tear you tear
he/she/it tears they tear

• *He tears stamps off envelopes.*

PAST

I tore we tore
you tore you tore
he/she/it tore they tore

• *The ligament tore with a “popping” sound.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has torn

PAST PERFECT ... had torn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am tearing we are tearing
you are tearing you are tearing
he/she/it is tearing they are tearing

• *Be careful—you’re tearing your shirt.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was tearing we were tearing
you were tearing you were tearing
he/she/it was tearing they were tearing

• *The kids were tearing into the chocolate brownies.*

FUTURE ... will tear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be tearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have torn

PAST PASSIVE

I was torn we were torn
you were torn you were torn
he/she/it was torn they were torn

• *A huge hole was torn in the building by the explosion.*

NOTE: The irregular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *care*, is presented here. The regular verb *tear*, which rhymes with *deer*, means “cry.”

COMPLEMENTS

tear *rip, come apart*

Darn it! My new jeans are tearing.
The canvas will tear if there is a high wind.

tear _____ *cause to rip / come apart*

OBJECT

I tore **the envelope** trying to open it.
A big gust of wind tore **our only sail**.
The documents had been torn in shipping.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *make/punch [a hole, opening] in*

OBJECT

The artillery fire tore **a huge gap** in our right flank.
A hole was torn in his shield by a spear.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *move with force/speed*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The kids tore **out of the room**.
The horses tore **around the last curve**.

tear _____ *damage [a muscle, ligament] by overstretching*

OBJECT

Dirk tore **his rotator cuff** playing tennis.
Soccer players often tear **muscles in their knees**.
His shoulder was torn lifting weights.

PASSIVE

tear _____ *damage greatly [USED ONLY IN THE PASSIVE]*

OBJECT

The country was torn by war and famine.

PHRASAL VERBS

tear **around/away/down/off/out/etc.**
move with force/speed in a specified direction

The limousine tore away from the curb.
The neighbor’s dog always tears out after moving cars.

tear **SEP** *apart/away/down/off/out/up/*
etc. pull in a specified direction

Tear the coupons apart and organize them.
Carpenters tore up the old carpet.

tear **into** _____ *begin to do/eat/etc. forcefully*

Jackie is tearing into remodeling the kitchen.
The girls really tore into the peanut butter.

tear **into** _____ *scold severely*

The boss tore into an employee who was late.

tear **SEP** *up reject*

The manager tore up the singer’s contract and offered her 10 times the money.

- IRREGULAR
- REGULAR

telecast | telecasts · telecast · have telecast
 telecast | telecasts · telecasted · have telecasted

telecast

PRESENT

I telecast we telecast
 you telecast you telecast
 he/she/it telecasts they telecast
 • *They telecast in English and Spanish.*

PAST

I telecast we telecast
 you telecast you telecast
 he/she/it telecast they telecast
 • *The station first telecast in 1983.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has telecast

PAST PERFECT ... had telecast

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am telecasting we are telecasting
 you are telecasting you are telecasting
 he/she/it is telecasting they are telecasting
 • *We are now telecasting soccer games live.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was telecasting we were telecasting
 you were telecasting you were telecasting
 he/she/it was telecasting they were telecasting
 • *The network was telecasting the World Series.*

FUTURE ... will telecast

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be telecasting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have telecast

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was telecast they were telecast

• *The first TV programs were telecast before World War II.*

COMPLEMENTS

telecast *broadcast by television*

When did the station first telecast in color?
 No station can telecast until it gets FCC approval.
 The station is telecasting live from Civic Center.

telecast _____ *broadcast by television*

OBJECT

Many networks telecast **reality programs** because they are very inexpensive to produce.
 Networks are required to telecast **a certain number of public service programs**.
 A local station telecasts a **“To Your Health” feature** during the 10 o'clock news.

PASSIVE

The royal wedding was telecast live around the world.

PRESENT

I tell we tell
 you tell you tell
 he/she/it tells they tell

• *He tells people what they want to hear.*

PAST

I told we told
 you told you told
 he/she/it told they told

• *I told the truth.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has told

PAST PERFECT ... had told

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am telling we are telling
 you are telling you are telling
 he/she/it is telling they are telling

• *I'm telling the whole world that I love you.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was telling we were telling
 you were telling you were telling
 he/she/it was telling they were telling

• *We were just telling them what happened.*

FUTURE

... will tell

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be telling

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have told

PAST PASSIVE

I was told we were told
 you were told you were told
 he/she/it was told they were told

• *The children were told that they could stay up late.*

COMPLEMENTS

tell reveal secret/confidential information

Please don't tell.

I will never tell.

tell have a definite effect

The long hours are beginning to tell.

The constant battering by the artillery was starting to tell.

tell know the outcome/result [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES]

Who can tell?

I certainly can't tell.

tell _____ put into words, express

OBJECT

I told **the truth**, but he was telling a flat-out lie.

He told **a story about growing up in Greece**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

I told **the kids** a ghost story.

Who wants to tell **them** the bad news?

TO PARAPHRASE

I told **a ghost story to the kids**.

Who wants to tell **the bad news to them**?

tell _____ inform

OBJECT + THAT-CLAUSE

We need to tell **them that the trip has been canceled**.

I told **everyone that we were engaged**.

PASSIVE

The press had been told **that the senator was ill**.

OBJECT + WH-CLAUSE

The consultant told **us what we should do**.

I told **them how much it would cost**.

OBJECT + WH-INFINITIVE

The taxi driver told **us where to go**.

PASSIVE

The staff was told **what to expect**.

tell _____ order, command

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I told **her to return the book as soon as she could**.

PASSIVE

They had been told **to stay inside during the storm**.

tell _____ recognize, determine with certainty [USUALLY WITH can OR could]

THAT-CLAUSE

I couldn't tell **that anything had happened**.

Can you tell **that we remodeled the kitchen**?

WH-CLAUSE

Can you tell **who it is**?

I can't tell **what went wrong**.

PHRASAL VERBS

tell SEP off scold, criticize

She told my brother off for not keeping his room clean.

PRESENT

I think we think
 you think you think
 he/she/it thinks they think
 • *He thinks that the movie begins at 7:45.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thinking we are thinking
 you are thinking you are thinking
 he/she/it is thinking they are thinking
 • *Don't rush me—I'm thinking.*

PAST

I thought we thought
 you thought you thought
 he/she/it thought they thought
 • *I thought long and hard about it.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thinking we were thinking
 you were thinking you were thinking
 he/she/it was thinking they were thinking
 • *They were thinking that the worst had happened.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thought

PAST PERFECT ... had thought

FUTURE ... will think

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be thinking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thought

PAST PASSIVE

I was thought we were thought
 you were thought you were thought
 he/she/it was thought they were thought
 • *The accident was thought to have been caused by pilot error.*

COMPLEMENTS

think use one's mind, reason

Think twice before you do anything.
 "I think, therefore I am." [RENÉ DESCARTES]

think _____ believe, expect
 THAT-CLAUSE

I thought **that dinner was good, but a little too heavy.**
 Do they think **that the flight will leave on time?**

think _____ consider, judge
 OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE NOUN

The reviewer thought **the book (to be) a bit of a dud.**
 The public thought **Clark (to be) a dashing hero.**
 At first, Truman was thought **(to be) a failed president.**
 Everyone thought **Thomas (to be) promising.**
 They thought **the idea (to be) ready to present to the board.**
 The car was thought **(to be) quite overpriced.**
 I thought **him to have more sense than that.**
 He was thought **to own several Renoirs.**

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + (to be) PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

PASSIVE
 OBJECT + INFINITIVE

PASSIVE

think _____ remember [USED IN QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVE SENTENCES, OFTEN WITH *can* OR *could*]

of OBJECT
 INFINITIVE

I can't think **of the girl's name.**
 Did you think **to lock the back door?**
 Who thought **to bring some insect repellent?**
 We couldn't think **what his name was.**
 I couldn't think **where we were supposed to meet the group.**
 I couldn't think **what to say.**
 Aunt Polly couldn't think **where to turn next.**

WH-CLAUSE

WH-INFINITIVE

think _____ contemplate, consider
 of/about OBJECT

The board was thinking **of Rex for secretary.**
 She thinks **about him** all the time.
 Anne was thinking **of asking Wentworth to the concert.**
 We were thinking **about ordering Chinese for dinner.**

of/about PRESENT PARTICIPLE

PHRASAL VERBS

think SEP **over** consider carefully

I need to think your proposal over before making a decision.

think SEP **up** invent, plan

We thought up a better way to manage inventory.
 They thought up a clever way to trick Bart and Jacob.

PRESENT

I thrive	we thrive
you thrive	you thrive
he/she/it thrives	they thrive

• *The senator thrives on controversy.*

PAST

I throve	we throve
you throve	you throve
he/she/it throve	they throve

•

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thriven

PAST PERFECT ... had thriven

PAST PASSIVE

Thrive is never used in the passive voice.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thriving	we are thriving
you are thriving	you are thriving
he/she/it is thriving	they are thriving

• *The children are thriving in their new school.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thriving	we were thriving
you were thriving	you were thriving
he/she/it was thriving	they were thriving

• *Despite the economy, our business was thriving.*

FUTURE

... will thrive

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be thriving

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have thriven

COMPLEMENTS

thrive *flourish, prosper*

These plants thrive in a warm, moist climate.

Children need stability to thrive.

A company needs capital to thrive.

The young lettuce plants thrive in spite of the hard frost last week.

thrive _____ *flourish/prosper* [because of]

on OBJECT

People can thrive **on a vegetarian diet**.I thrive **on hard work**.Swindlers thrive **on people who want to make money without working**.

PRESENT

I throw we throw
 you throw you throw
 he/she/it throws they throw
 • *He throws great parties.*

PAST

I threw we threw
 you threw you threw
 he/she/it threw they threw
 • *I threw another log on the fire.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thrown

PAST PERFECT ... had thrown

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am throwing we are throwing
 you are throwing you are throwing
 he/she/it is throwing they are throwing
 • *I am throwing an informal reception for them.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was throwing we were throwing
 you were throwing you were throwing
 he/she/it was throwing they were throwing
 • *He was throwing rocks into the pond.*

FUTURE

... will throw

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be throwing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thrown

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrown we were thrown
 you were thrown you were thrown
 he/she/it was thrown they were thrown
 • *A rope was thrown to the people in the canoe.*

COMPLEMENTS

throw toss/hurl a projectile

He doesn't throw with much force.
 I couldn't throw because I had injured my shoulder.
 If you want to play baseball, you have to learn how to throw.

throw _____ toss, hurl

OBJECT

Kids love to throw **rocks**.
 The mob started throwing **bricks**.
 The pitcher could throw **the ball** sidarm.
 My sister threw **her coat on the sofa**.
 Josh threw **the report on my desk**.

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

throw _____ propel suddenly and forcefully

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The explosion threw **me to the ground**.
 Someone threw **a chair against the wall**.
 The cook threw **the pizza dough high into the air**.
 The driver was thrown **into the ditch**.

PASSIVE

throw _____ direct, cast

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The actor threw **a dirty look at the people talking in the front row**.
 The lantern threw **light around the barn**.
 All of our resources were thrown **into the project**.

PASSIVE

throw _____ toss, give

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

He threw **the dog a bone**.
 Throw **me that notebook**, will you?
 He threw **a bone to the dog**.
 Throw **that notebook to me**, will you?

TO PARAPHRASE

throw _____ host [an event]

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

The church threw **a potluck dinner**.
 We threw **my sister an engagement party**.
 They are going to throw **us a going-away party**.
 We threw **an engagement party for my sister**.
 They are going to throw **a going-away party for us**.

for PARAPHRASE



throw _____ put suddenly [in a place, condition]

OBJECT + into OBJECT

The sheriff threw **the suspects into jail**.
His remarks threw **the audience into hysteria**.

PHRASAL VERBS

throw SEP **around/aside/back/down/in/off/out/up/etc.** toss/hurl in a specified direction

The players were throwing a Frisbee around.

Would you throw the ball back?

He threw his head back and laughed.

He threw his book bag down.

throw SEP **around** spend [money] freely

He throws money around like it grows on trees.

throw SEP **away** discard, get rid of

Don't throw the lamp away; I'm going to fix it.

throw SEP **in** interject

Jan threw in the idea of working at a soup kitchen.

throw SEP **in** add as an extra

They will throw in a medium pizza for free.

throw SEP **off** mislead, fool

His foreign accent threw the police off.

throw SEP **on** put on in haste

I'll throw on a jacket and be ready to go.

throw SEP **out** discard, get rid of

We won't throw the plastic out; we'll recycle it instead.

throw SEP **out** expel

The teacher threw him out for using profanity.

throw SEP **out** reject

The judge will throw the convict's testimony out.

throw SEP **out** offer

Dave is always throwing out suggestions.

throw SEP **together** put together in haste

Let's throw together some pasta for supper.

We can throw a scale model together in a week.

throw up vomit

He threw up on the way home from the ballpark.

throw SEP **up** build quickly

A developer threw up a flimsy apartment building on the corner.

EXPRESSIONS

throw _____ a curve surprise [someone]

The company threw us a curve by switching medical insurance plans.

throw a fit/tantrum display anger

Johnny throws a fit when I ask him to wash his hands.

throw [a lot of / some] light on _____ clarify, give details about

Scientists threw some light on the human genome.

throw cold water on _____ discourage

The committee threw cold water on our ideas for reducing waste.

throw _____ for a loop shock/confuse [someone]

The program glitch threw the programmers for a loop.

throw good money after bad waste even more money on something

Frank threw good money after bad by buying 100 more shares of the worthless stock.

throw in the sponge/towel quit, give up

The firm is throwing in the towel after losing its three biggest customers.

throw [one's] hands up quit in despair

After losing eight straight Solitaire games, Dad threw his hands up and decided to read the newspaper.

throw [one's] weight around use one's power excessively

Mid-level managers love to throw their weight around when the boss is gone.

Paul threw himself into basketweaving.

throw [oneself] into _____ involve oneself in [something] eagerly

throw the book at _____ charge [someone] with as many crimes as possible

The district attorney threw the book at the alleged child molester.

PRESENT

I thrust we thrust
 you thrust you thrust
 he/she/it thrusts they thrust

• *He thrusts the note in his pocket and sighs.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am thrusting we are thrusting
 you are thrusting you are thrusting
 he/she/it is thrusting they are thrusting

• *Someone is always thrusting a petition at you.*

PAST

I thrust we thrust
 you thrust you thrust
 he/she/it thrust they thrust

• *I thrust through the crowd frantically.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was thrusting we were thrusting
 you were thrusting you were thrusting
 he/she/it was thrusting they were thrusting

• *A rodent was thrusting through the undergrowth.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has thrust

PAST PERFECT ... had thrust

FUTURE ... will thrust

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be thrusting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have thrust

PAST PASSIVE

I was thrust we were thrust
 you were thrust you were thrust
 he/she/it was thrust they were thrust

• *A gun was thrust into my hand.*

COMPLEMENTS

thrust _____ *push forward suddenly*

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

PASSIVE

The soldier thrust a **sword through his shield**.
 Batman thrust **his elbow into the villain's stomach**.
 The host thrust **the children into the limelight**.
 My head was thrust **into a barrel of water**.
 Fame had been thrust **on her** at an early age.

thrust _____ *move forward forcefully*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A tugboat was thrusting **through the waves**.
 Her scream thrust **through the still night air**.

thrust _____ *jut, extend out*

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

A long wharf thrust **into the river**.
 A diving board thrust **over the water**.

PHRASAL VERBS

thrust back/down/in/out/up/etc.
move forcefully in a specified direction

The boy's tongue thrust out as he sighted down the barrel.
 Daffodils were thrusting up on the first warm day of spring.

thrust ^{SEP} *aside/away/back/down/in/out/up/etc.* *push suddenly in a specified direction*

The police thrust the protesters aside.
 He opened his briefcase and thrust the report in.

PRESENT

I tread	we tread
you tread	you tread
he/she/it treads	they tread

• *He treads lightly for such a big man.*

PAST

I trod	we trod
you trod	you trod
he/she/it trod	they trod

• *The soldiers trod along the muddy path.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has trod/trodden

PAST PERFECT ... had trod/trodden

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am treading	we are treading
you are treading	you are treading
he/she/it is treading	they are treading

• *The diplomat is treading lightly in negotiations.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was treading	we were treading
you were treading	you were treading
he/she/it was treading	they were treading

• *The visitors were treading a path across our lawn.*

FUTURE

... will tread

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be treading

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have trod/trodden

PAST PASSIVE

—

—

—

—

it was trod/trodden they were trod/trodden

• *The snow in town was trodden into a dirty slush.*

COMPLEMENTS

tread ____ walk, go on foot

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

The column of soldiers trod slowly **along the road**.“Fools rush in **where Angels fear to tread**.” [ALEXANDER POPE]Dejectedly, he slowly trod **up the long staircase**.Don't tread **on the new lawn**.

ADVERB OF MANNER

We trod **slowly** to keep from sinking into the soft ground.The children are treading **carefully** past the sleeping dogs.We need to tread **quietly** so as not to wake the children.

“I have spread my dreams beneath your feet;

Tread **softly** because you tread on my dreams.” [W.B. YEATS]

tread ____ act cautiously

ADVERB OF MANNER

The company has to tread **lightly** or risk legal action.The judge warned the prosecutor to tread **carefully**.

tread ____ wear (a path), trample

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE

We trod **a path out to the mailbox**.The deer had trod **a route through the forest**.

PASSIVE

A muddy trail had been trod **across the tile floor**.

PRESENT

I understand we understand
 you understand you understand
 he/she/it understands they understand
 • *He understands the situation perfectly.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am understanding we are understanding
 you are understanding you are understanding
 he/she/it is understanding they are understanding
 • *We are understanding each other better now.*

PAST

I understood we understood
 you understood you understood
 he/she/it understood they understood
 • *They understood only a few words.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was understanding we were understanding
 you were understanding you were understanding
 he/she/it was understanding they were understanding
 • *They weren't understanding his Italian very well.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has understood

PAST PERFECT ... had understood

FUTURE

... will understand

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be understanding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have understood

PAST PASSIVE

I was understood we were understood
 you were understood you were understood
 he/she/it was understood they were understood
 • *The tour guide was easily understood.*

COMPLEMENTS

understand *know the meaning of something*

Do you understand?
 He is too young to understand.

understand _____ *comprehend, know the meaning of*

OBJECT

The doctor understood **the nature of the patient's symptoms**.
 Do you understand **this equation**?

PASSIVE

Nobody could understand **the cockney slang used in the movie**.
 The assembly instructions must not have been understood.

WH-CLAUSE

I understood **what he was trying to say**.
 Did you understand **where we were going**?

WH-INFINITIVE

We need to understand **how much this is going to cost**.
 Do you understand **whom to call if you have a problem**?
 I understand **what to do**.
 Do you understand **where to pick up your passengers**?

understand _____ *know what makes [something] work/happen*

OBJECT

It takes students a long time to really understand **evolution**.
 Does anyone understand **the stock market**?
 Almost no one understands **credit and default swaps**.

PASSIVE

The role of washing hands to control disease was not understood at the time.

WH-CLAUSE

Do you understand **what drives the global economy**?
 Even third graders understand **why the sun seems to rise in the east and set in the west**.

understand _____ *know and be sympathetic to the feelings/attitudes of*

OBJECT

My boyfriend doesn't understand **me**.
 I don't think the director understood **Lady Macbeth** very well.
 Older people never understand **the younger generation**.

understand _____ *get the idea/notion [OFTEN AS A POLITE FORM OF IMPLIED QUESTION]*

OBJECT + INFINITIVE

I understand **you to be a student at Santa Cruz**.
 We understand **them to be having lunch with us**.
 I understand **the apartment to be available**.

THAT-CLAUSE

I understand **that you are applying for a job with us**.
 We understand **that the flight may be delayed**.
 It is understood **that the parents will have joint custody**.

PRESENT

I uphold we uphold
 you uphold you uphold
 he/she/it upholds they uphold

• *The firm upholds its tradition of service.*

PAST

I upheld we upheld
 you upheld you upheld
 he/she/it upheld they upheld

• *The court upheld the lower court ruling.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has upheld

PAST PERFECT ... had upheld

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upholding we are upholding
 you are upholding you are upholding
 he/she/it is upholding they are upholding

• *The Marines are upholding centuries of tradition.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upholding we were upholding
 you were upholding you were upholding
 he/she/it was upholding they were upholding

• *We were upholding our end of the bargain.*

FUTURE

... will uphold

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be upholding

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have upheld

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was upheld they were upheld

• *The ruling was upheld by the appellate court.*

COMPLEMENTS

uphold _____ confirm/support [a decision, opinion]

OBJECT

The courts will usually uphold **lower court rulings** unless there is a demonstrable error of fact or law.

The whole committee upheld **the ruling of the subcommittee**.

The Supreme Court upheld **the plaintiff** in *Brown v. Board of Education*.

PASSIVE

The decision was upheld unanimously by the appeals court.

uphold _____ maintain [a custom, practice]

OBJECT

John upheld **the family tradition** by joining the Navy.

Sadly, the school has not been able to uphold **its superior image**.

The new CEO vowed to uphold **the company's reputation for fiscal responsibility**.

PASSIVE

The honor of the Corps had been upheld.

PRESENT

I upset we upset
 you upset you upset
 he/she/it upsets they upset

• *The new development upsets all our plans.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am upsetting we are upsetting
 you are upsetting you are upsetting
 he/she/it is upsetting they are upsetting

• *I'm sorry that I'm upsetting you.*

PAST

I upset we upset
 you upset you upset
 he/she/it upset they upset

• *The president's decision upset the voters.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was upsetting we were upsetting
 you were upsetting you were upsetting
 he/she/it was upsetting they were upsetting

• *The weather was upsetting our arrangements.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has upset

PAST PERFECT ... had upset

FUTURE ... will upset

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be upsetting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have upset

PAST PASSIVE

I was upset we were upset
 you were upset you were upset
 he/she/it was upset they were upset

• *Naturally, we were quite upset by what happened.*

COMPLEMENTS

upset _____ knock over

OBJECT

The dogs upset **some potted plants** on the patio.
 The waiter upset **a bottle of wine** as he was clearing the table.
 A whole gallon of paint had been upset.

PASSIVE

upset _____ cause to be disturbed/worried/unhappy

OBJECT

The hotel clerk's rudeness really upset **us**.
 Thunderstorms upset **the dogs** terribly.
 Spicy food always upsets **my stomach**.
 He delights in upsetting **the administrators**.
 The parents were upset at the news of the school's closure.

PASSIVE

upset _____ disturb the order/working of

OBJECT

The kids are really good at upsetting **my daily routine**.
 The rain upset **our plans for a trip to the beach**.
 Global warming is upsetting **many delicate ecosystems**.
 The collapse of the credit market has upset **the normal balance of supply and demand for housing**.
 The orderly transfer of power was totally upset by the prince's unexpected death.

PASSIVE

upset _____ win a surprising victory over

OBJECT

The Jets upset **the Colts** in Superbowl III.
 Harry Truman upset **Thomas Dewey** in the 1948 presidential election.

EXPRESSIONS

upset the apple cart ruin something

Grady upset the apple cart by telling Louise about the surprise party.

wake | wakes · waked · have waked
 wake | wakes · woke · have woken
 waken | wakens · wakened · have wakened

✓ REGULAR
 ✓ IRREGULAR
 ✓ REGULAR

PRESENT

I wake we wake
 you wake you wake
 he/she/it wakes they wake

• *He usually wakes at seven.*

PAST

I woke we woke
 you woke you woke
 he/she/it woke they woke

• *I woke just before the alarm went off.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has woken

PAST PERFECT ... had woken

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am waking we are waking
 you are waking you are waking
 he/she/it is waking they are waking

• *He's waking the neighbors with his lawn mower.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was waking we were waking
 you were waking you were waking
 he/she/it was waking they were waking

• *The birds were always waking us at dawn.*

FUTURE ... will wake

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be waking

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have woken

PAST PASSIVE

I was woken we were woken
 you were woken you were woken
 he/she/it was woken they were woken

• *We were woken in the middle of the night by a dog barking.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: *Wake* and *waken* have the same meanings and the same general uses. They are similar to *awake/awaken* (verb No. 2), with this difference: *Wake* is used with *up* (*Jane woke up at 7 o'clock*), but *awake, awaken, and waken* are not.

wake *quit sleeping*

We need to be quiet because the children wake so easily.
 The patient began waking from the anesthetic.
 In the springtime, I wake long before I need to get up.

wake _____ *arouse from sleeping*

OBJECT

Wake **the children** at eight if they are not up already.
 Don't wake **me** unless it is an emergency.
 His snoring would wake **the dead**.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

I was woken by the sound of dripping water.
 The thunderstorm woke **whoever was sleeping**.

wake _____ *stir up*

OBJECT

Spring woke **the slumbering land**.
 The injustice woke **a feeling of outrage in the entire community**.
 His good fortune wakened **feelings of envy in the little village**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wake up *become aware of what is happening*

I hope he wakes up before it's too late.
 Fritz woke up after the heart attack and started exercising and eating right.

wake SEP **up** *cause to become aware of what is happening*

The advisor woke the mayor up to the danger of rising water.
 This report will wake citizens up to the importance of alternative energy sources.

EXPRESSIONS

wake up and smell the coffee
become aware of what is happening

The world has changed, and we must wake up and smell the coffee.

PRESENT

I wear we wear
 you wear you wear
 he/she/it wears they wear

• *He always wears a coat and tie.*

PAST

I wore we wore
 you wore you wore
 he/she/it wore they wore

• *She wore her little black dress to the party.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has worn

PAST PERFECT ... had worn

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wearing we are wearing
 you are wearing you are wearing
 he/she/it is wearing they are wearing

• *I am wearing a skirt and sweater to the concert.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wearing we were wearing
 you were wearing you were wearing
 he/she/it was wearing they were wearing

• *What were they wearing?*

FUTURE ... will wear

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wearing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have worn

PAST PASSIVE

I was worn we were worn
 you were worn you were worn
 he/she/it was worn they were worn

• *In those days, white was never worn after Labor Day.*

COMPLEMENTS

wear remain in good condition after much use

That fabric won't wear very well.
 The carpet in the hall will wear for years.

wear _____ have/carry on one's body

OBJECT

The kids wear **jeans** most of the time.
 Politicians felt it necessary to wear **flag pins**.
 Men are required to wear **ties** when meeting with clients.
 Mary wears **bifocals** now.

PASSIVE

WH-CLAUSE

Casual clothing is worn nearly everywhere.
 The tribe only wore **what they themselves produced**.
 I give up; wear **whatever you want to**.

wear _____ have [a certain hairstyle]

OBJECT + ADVERB OF MANNER

She wore **her hair off the shoulder**.

PASSIVE

He wore **his hair in a ponytail**.

Her hair was worn **in a huge Afro**.

wear _____ have [a certain facial expression]

OBJECT

He was wearing a **silly grin** when he made the announcement.

His face wears a **permanent scowl**.

Why are you wearing **such a sad face**?

wear _____ damage/erode gradually, usually by friction

OBJECT

Wagon wheels wore **ruts** along the Oregon Trail.

The Mississippi River wore a **new channel** east of Kaskaskia.

PASSIVE

A path had been worn through the forest.

PHRASAL VERBS

wear SEP **down** make weak/tired

The 12-hour days are wearing the staff down.

wear **off** go away gradually

The effects of the painkiller wore off after a few hours.

wear **on** continue, pass

The meeting wore on into the early hours of the morning.

It got more cloudy as the day wore on.

wear **out** become exhausted/useless

The tires have worn out on my pickup truck.

wear SEP **out** use until exhausted

Our son has worn out his winter coat.

wear SEP **out** exhaust, tire out

Shopping all day with his wife wore him out.

PRESENT

I weave we weave
you weave you weave
he/she/it weaves they weave
• *She weaves baskets from birch bark.*

PAST

I wove we wove
you wove you wove
he/she/it wove they wove
• *The spider wove a web across the doorway.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has woven

PAST PERFECT ... had woven

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weaving we are weaving
you are weaving you are weaving
he/she/it is weaving they are weaving
• *The children are weaving simple placemats.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weaving we were weaving
you were weaving you were weaving
he/she/it was weaving they were weaving
• *They were weaving a wool rug.*

FUTURE

... will weave

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be weaving

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have woven

PAST PASSIVE

— —
— —
it was woven they were woven
• *These wall hangings were woven by hand.*

COMPLEMENTS

NOTE: The regular past form *weaved* is used only in the sense “move in and out / side to side”; *wove* and *woven* are used in all other senses.

weave *pass threads/strips/etc. over and under one another to form something*

They are teaching the students how to weave.
Children learn by watching their mothers weave.
In some cultures, only men weave.

weave *move in and out / side to side*

A red SUV weaved through the bridge traffic.

weave _____ *pass [threads/strips/etc.] over and under one another [to form something]*

OBJECT

They wove **palm fronds** to make a thatched roof.
I wove **my fingers** to make a step for her.
We wove **the reeds** into a simple boat.

weave _____ *form by passing threads/strips/etc. over and under one another*

OBJECT

The mill wove **beautiful linen tablecloths**.
Every society on earth has woven **some kind of basket**.
The women wove **a crown from flowers they had picked**.
A crude filter was woven from plant stalks.

PASSIVE

weave _____ *combine to make a whole*

OBJECT

A good story weaves **a number of plot lines**.
The poem weaves **the themes of love and loss in 19th-century England**.

weave _____ *make by combining into a whole*

OBJECT

“Oh! what **a tangled web** we weave
When first we practice to deceive.” [SIR WALTER SCOTT]
Wagner’s operas are woven from many musical themes.

PASSIVE

weave _____ *form [a web] [OF A SPIDER]*

OBJECT

A spider wove **a beautiful web** between those two trees.

PRESENT

I wed we wed
you wed you wed
he/she/it weds they wed

• *His opera weds two different traditions.*

PAST

I wed we wed
you wed you wed
he/she/it wed they wed

• *They wed as soon as they graduated.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wed

PAST PERFECT ... had wed

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wedding we are wedding
you are wedding you are wedding
he/she/it is wedding they are wedding

• *The composer is wedding folk and rock music.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wedding we were wedding
you were wedding you were wedding
he/she/it was wedding they were wedding

• *He was wedding the design to other brochures.*

FUTURE ... will wed

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wedding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wed

PAST PASSIVE

I was wed we were wed
you were wed you were wed
he/she/it was wed they were wed

• *The couple was wed by her family's minister.*

COMPLEMENTS

wed marry

When did they wed?

John and Marcia wed after a tumultuous engagement.

My parents wed in Hawaii when Dad was in the Navy.

wed _____ marry

OBJECT

She wed **her childhood sweetheart**.

Whom did she finally wed?

My father wed **my mother** in 1982.

wed _____ perform the marriage ceremony for

OBJECT

I have wed **hundreds of people** over the years.

Reverend Gerry wed **your parents**.

They were wed in the garden, if I remember correctly.

PASSIVE

wed _____ unite, join closely

OBJECT

Fusion cuisine weds **cooking styles from all over the world**.

The building weds **Spanish and modernist styles**.

His art weds **realism and postmodernism**.

PRESENT

I weep we weep
 you weep you weep
 he/she/it weeps they weep

• *He always weeps at weddings.*

PAST

I wept we wept
 you wept you wept
 he/she/it wept they wept

• *They wept when they heard the news.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wept

PAST PERFECT ... had wept

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am weeping we are weeping
 you are weeping you are weeping
 he/she/it is weeping they are weeping

• *She is weeping uncontrollably.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was weeping we were weeping
 you were weeping you were weeping
 he/she/it was weeping they were weeping

• *The children were all weeping.*

FUTURE

... will weep

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE

... will be weeping

FUTURE PERFECT

... will have wept

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was wept they were wept

• *No tears were wept for him.*

COMPLEMENTS

weep *shed tears, cry*

You have to take time to weep.

The whole family was weeping during the service.

She wept every time she thought of the accident.

weep *give off drops of liquid*

The walls were weeping in the humid air.

Aloe plants weep if you cut them.

The damp air weeps when it comes into contact with the cold metal.

weep — *shed [tears]*

OBJECT

Weep **no tears** for me.

He wept **bitter tears** for what he had done.

PASSIVE

Endless tears were wept over such a senseless death.

- IRREGULAR
- REGULAR

wet | wets · wet · have wet
 wet | wets · wetted · have wetted

wet

184

PRESENT

I wet we wet
 you wet you wet
 he/she/it wets they wet

• *She always wets her lips before she speaks.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wetting we are wetting
 you are wetting you are wetting
 he/she/it is wetting they are wetting

• *She is wetting her hair to keep it from blowing.*

PAST

I wet we wet
 you wet you wet
 he/she/it wet they wet

• *He wet his fingers before taking the ball.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wetting we were wetting
 you were wetting you were wetting
 he/she/it was wetting they were wetting

• *They were wetting the tent to make it cooler.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wet

PAST PERFECT ... had wet

FUTURE ... will wet

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wetting

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wet

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was wet they were wet

• *Once the insulation was wet by the storm, it was useless.*

COMPLEMENTS

wet _____ moisten, dampen
 OBJECT

The barber always wets **my hair** before he cuts it.
 You should wet **the cork** before putting it back in the bottle.
 Lightly wet **the metal** with oil so the engine won't smoke.
 The oily pavement had been wet by the mist, making it slippery.

PASSIVE

wet _____ urinate in/on
 OBJECT

The baby always wets **his diaper** at the most inconvenient time.
 We will need to change his pajamas; he wet **them** again.
 One of the kids wet **the bed**.

PHRASAL VERBS

wet SEP down put water on

After every game, they wet the infield down.

EXPRESSIONS

wet [one's] whistle take a drink

Thirsty? Here's some lemonade for you to wet your whistle.

PRESENT

I win we win
 you win you win
 he/she/it wins they win

• *He wins most card games he plays.*

PAST

I won we won
 you won you won
 he/she/it won they won

• *I won first place in the math contest.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has won

PAST PERFECT ... had won

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winning we are winning
 you are winning you are winning
 he/she/it is winning they are winning

• *We're winning!*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winning we were winning
 you were winning you were winning
 he/she/it was winning they were winning

• *They were winning most of their games.*

FUTURE

... will win

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be winning

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have won

PAST PASSIVE

I was won we were won
 you were won you were won
 he/she/it was won they were won

• *The election was won by superior organization.*

COMPLEMENTS

win *be victorious in a contest/competition*

I never win.

They could win if they played their very best.

Who's winning?

win _____ *be victorious in [a contest, competition]*

OBJECT

Alice and Albert won **the dance competition**.

Barack Obama won **the 2008 presidential election**.

Heather always wins **the argument**.

The game was won in the last minute.

PASSIVE

win _____ *receive as the result of a contest/conflict/bet*

OBJECT

We won **a week's vacation in Hawaii**.

After bitter fighting, they finally won **the fortress**.

They hope to win **the Rose Bowl** this year.

I almost won **the jackpot in last week's Lotto**.

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT

You could win **yourself a prize**.

The victory won **us a little more time**.

Excellent coaching won **them the championship**.

for PARAPHRASE

You could win **a prize for yourself**.

The victory won **a little more time for us**.

Excellent coaching won **the championship for them**.

win _____ *gain [affection, support, admiration, etc.]*

OBJECT

Ministers have to win **a congregation's respect**.

The comedian won **the audience's applause**.

Their goal was to win **the hearts and minds of the people**.

Faint heart never won **fair lady**. [PROVERB]

PHRASAL VERBS

win out *be finally victorious*

It took six months, but our proposal won out.

win SEP over *convert, persuade*

The president won congressional leaders over to his point of view.

PRESENT

I wind we wind
 you wind you wind
 he/she/it winds they wind
 • *The path winds across the hills for miles.*

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am winding we are winding
 you are winding you are winding
 he/she/it is winding they are winding
 • *The press conference is winding down.*

PAST

I wound we wound
 you wound you wound
 he/she/it wound they wound
 • *She wound the cloth around her head.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was winding we were winding
 you were winding you were winding
 he/she/it was winding they were winding
 • *She was winding the clock with a key.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wound

PAST PERFECT ... had wound

FUTURE ... will wind

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be winding

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wound

PAST PASSIVE

I was wound we were wound
 you were wound you were wound
 he/she/it was wound they were wound
 • *The rope was wound around a tree trunk.*

NOTE: The verb *wind*, which rhymes with *kind*, is presented here; its irregular past form *wound* rhymes with *sound*. The regular verb *wind*, which rhymes with *sinned* and means “make out of breath,” is rarely used.

COMPLEMENTS

wind _____ coil, move in twists and turns

ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We wound **in and out through the trees**.
 The path wound **around the hill**.
 Vines wound **around the old oak tree**.
 The river winds **through a maze of canyons**.
 The wire wound **across the ceiling and out the window**.

wind _____ wrap, cover by circling

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

To make an electromagnet, wind **wire around an iron core**.
 He wound **his shirt over his fist** and broke the window.
 I wound **the rope around my waist** and began to climb down.
 She wound **her arms around her daughter** and consoled her.
 Her long hair had been wound **into a coil on her head**.

PASSIVE

wind _____ tighten the spring of

OBJECT

Did you remember to wind **the clock**?
 Wind **the top** and put it on the floor.
 In old cars, the starter was wound by hand.

PASSIVE

wind _____ wrap around a center/core

OBJECT + ADVERB OF PLACE TO/FROM

We wound **the videotape to where the game started**.
 She is winding **the yarn into a center-pull ball**.
 The film had been wound **to the end of the reel**.

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

wind along/around/down/up/etc. twist in a specified direction

The creek winds along for several miles.

wind down come slowly to an end

The party was winding down by midnight.

wind down relax

Mike was beginning to wind down after a hectic day at work.

wind up end

The conference is scheduled to wind up at noon.

The acrobat wound up in the hospital with a broken leg.

They wound up living in Paris for the rest of their lives.

wind SEP **up** bring to an end

Let's wind this meeting up, okay?

PRESENT

I wring we wring
 you wring you wring
 he/she/it wrings they wring
 • *He wrings his hands when he's nervous.*

PAST

I wrung we wrung
 you wrung you wrung
 he/she/it wrung they wrung
 • *Betty wrung Alice's hand excitedly.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has wrung

PAST PERFECT ... had wrung

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am wringing we are wringing
 you are wringing you are wringing
 he/she/it is wringing they are wringing
 • *I'm wringing out my soaked trousers.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was wringing we were wringing
 you were wringing you were wringing
 he/she/it was wringing they were wringing
 • *The farmer was wringing the chickens' necks.*

FUTURE

... will wring

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be wringing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have wrung

PAST PASSIVE

— —
 — —
 it was wrung they were wrung

• *The towel was wrung out until it stopped dripping.*

COMPLEMENTS

wring *writhe*

His hands were wringing compulsively.
 My hands wrung uncontrollably as we waited for the verdict.

wring _____ *break by twisting forcibly*

OBJECT

Many ancient societies executed criminals by wringing
their necks.

Every Saturday, my grandmother wrung **a chicken's neck**
 for Sunday dinner.

PASSIVE

The dancer Isadora Duncan's neck was wrung by her own
 scarf in a freak automobile accident.

wring _____ *obtain/extract by exerting pressure*OBJECT + *from* OBJECT

The police wrung **a confession from the suspect.**
 The union wrung **new contract terms from the company.**
 A few concessions were wrung **from the mayor's office.**

PASSIVE

PHRASAL VERBS

wring **SEP** **out** *squeeze and twist to force liquid out of*

I wrung the dishcloth out and
 wiped the kitchen counter.
 Wring out the clothes before you hang them up to dry.
 The bathing suits were wrung out and spread on the
 patio chairs.

EXPRESSIONS

wring [one's] hands *twist/squeeze one's hands in distress*

The boss was wringing his hands as he
 announced the layoffs.
 The widow was wringing her hands and weeping.

PRESENT

I write we write
 you write you write
 he/she/it writes they write
 • *He never writes anymore.*

PAST

I wrote we wrote
 you wrote you wrote
 he/she/it wrote they wrote
 • *Jane Austen wrote Emma before 1816.*

PRESENT PERFECT ... have | has written

PAST PERFECT ... had written

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am writing we are writing
 you are writing you are writing
 he/she/it is writing they are writing
 • *I am writing as fast as I can.*

PAST PROGRESSIVE

I was writing we were writing
 you were writing you were writing
 he/she/it was writing they were writing
 • *He was writing a letter to Georgiana.*

FUTURE ... will write

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE ... will be writing

FUTURE PERFECT ... will have written

PAST PASSIVE

I was written we were written
 you were written you were written
 he/she/it was written they were written
 • *The letter was written to a family friend.*

COMPLEMENTS

write form letters/words with a pen/pencil/etc.

write compose and send a letter

write _____ compose and send [a letter]

OBJECT

INDIRECT OBJECT + DIRECT OBJECT
 to PARAPHRASE

write _____ compose [a text, work]

OBJECT

write _____ put in writing

OBJECT

write _____ express/communicate in written form

(OBJECT +) THAT-CLAUSE

(OBJECT +) WH-CLAUSE

DIRECT QUOTATION

Please write neatly.

His arthritis made it hard for him to write.

People don't write nearly as much as they used to.
 I'll write when I have a chance.

John and Abigail Adams wrote **each other** frequently.
 Senator Blather wrote **his constituents** every three months.

George wrote **Marcia a touching letter**.
 George wrote **a touching letter to Marcia**.

Donizetti apparently wrote **The Elixir of Love** in three weeks.

Mark Twain wrote **hilariously funny letters to the editor**.

Hilary wrote **poetry** in Ascona one summer.

We are writing **a rebuttal to the biased newspaper article**.

I wrote **a check for \$40**.

The doctor wrote **a prescription for an antibiotic**.

Please write **your name and address** in the space provided.

Darwin wrote **that species evolve over the course of generations through natural selection**.

He wrote **me that they might move back to California**.

She wrote **how the product should be introduced**.

Sam wrote **his parents what he thought of the camp food**.

"**There was never a good war,**" wrote Benjamin Franklin, "**or a bad peace.**"



PHRASAL VERBS

write (away/off) for _____ request in writing

Andy wrote away for the new seed catalogs.

write SEP down make a note/record of

The secretary wrote down everything the boss said. Gerry wrote the lyrics down while they were still fresh in his mind.

write SEP in vote for [someone] by writing [his/her] name in a special place on a ballot

Every election, someone writes Alfred E. Newman in for president.

write SEP off give up on, cancel

The bank wrote off the \$8,000 loan.

write SEP off consider lost/hopeless/ etc.

The hotel manager wrote off the missing towels. Many fans write the Cubs off before September. Our company had to write off several bad debts last year.

write SEP off deduct from one's taxes

We wrote the computer off as an itemized deduction.

write SEP out spell out [a number, abbreviation]

Write out "621" as "six hundred twenty-one." Be sure to write out all abbreviations.

write SEP up compose [a text, an article], often from notes

It will take me two hours to write up the minutes of the meeting.

Harper finally wrote up his review of the best pizza restaurants in St. Louis.

write SEP up prepare a written/printed copy of

The sales clerk will write your order up.

Irregular Verb Form Index

This index includes all irregular forms of the 188 irregular verbs in this book: the irregular past forms, as well as the irregular third-person singular present forms used by a few verbs.

A form followed by an asterisk (*) is a past form that is spelled like the base form of the verb; except for *read*, the past form is also pronounced like the base form.

- am **be** 3
are **be** 3
arisen **arise** 1
arose **arise** 1
ate **eat** 49
awoke **awake** 2
awoken **awake** 2
- bade **bid** 17
beat* **beat** 5
beaten **beat** 5
became **become** 6
become* **become** 6
been **be** 3
befallen **befall** 7
befell **befall** 7
began **begin** 9
begat **beget** 8
begot **beget** 8
begotten **beget** 8
begun **begin** 9
beheld **behold** 10
bent **bend** 11
bereft **bereave** 12
beset* **beset** 14
besought **beseech** 13
bestriden **bestride** 15
bestrode **bestride** 15
bet* **bet** 16
bid* **bid** 17
bidden **bid** 17
bit **bite** 19
bitten **bite** 19
bled **bleed** 20
blew **blow** 21
blown **blow** 21
bore **bear** 4
born **bear** 4
borne **bear** 4
bought **buy** 29
bound **bind** 18
bred **breed** 23
broadcast* **broadcast** 25
- broke **break** 22
broken **break** 22
brought **bring** 24
built **build** 26
burnt **burn** 27
burst* **burst** 28
- came **come** 37
cast* **cast** 30
caught **catch** 31
chid **chide** 32
chidden **chide** 32
chose **choose** 33
chosen **choose** 33
clad **clothe** 36
cleft **cleave** 34
clove **cleave** 34
cloven **cleave** 34
clung **cling** 35
come* **come** 37
cost* **cost** 38
crept **creep** 39
cut* **cut** 40
- dealt **deal** 41
did **do** 44
does **do** 44
done **do** 44
dove **dive** 43
drank **drink** 47
drawn **draw** 45
dreamt **dream** 46
drew **draw** 45
driven **drive** 48
drove **drive** 48
drunk **drink** 47
dug **dig** 42
- eaten **eat** 49
- fallen **fall** 50
fed **feed** 51
fell **fall** 50

felt **feel** 52
 fit* **fit** 55
 fled **flee** 56
 flew **fly** 58
 flown **fly** 58
 flung **fling** 57
 forbade **forbid** 60
 forbidden **forbid** 60
 forbore **forbear** 59
 forborne **forbear** 59
 forecast* **forecast** 61
 foregoes **forego** 64
 foregone **forego** 64
 forewent **forego** 64
 forgave **forgive** 63
 forgiven **forgive** 63
 forgoes **forgo** 64
 forgone **forgo** 64
 forgot **forget** 62
 forgotten **forget** 62
 forsaken **forsake** 65
 forsook **forsake** 65
 forwent **forgo** 64
 fought **fight** 53
 found **find** 54
 froze **freeze** 66
 frozen **freeze** 66

gainsaid **gainsay** 67
 gave **give** 70
 girt **gird** 69
 given **give** 70
 goes **go** 71
 gone **go** 71
 got **get** 68
 gotten **get** 68
 grew **grow** 73
 ground **grind** 72
 grown **grow** 73

had **have** 76
 hamstrung **hamstring** 74
 has **have** 76
 heard **hear** 77
 held **hold** 81
 hewn **hew** 78

hid **hide** 79
 hidden **hide** 79
 hit* **hit** 80
 hung **hang** 75
 hurt* **hurt** 82

is **be** 3

kept **keep** 83
 knelt **kneel** 84
 knew **know** 86
 knit* **knit** 85
 known **know** 86

lain **lie** 92
 lay **lie** 92
 leapt **leap** 88
 led **lead** 87
 left **leave** 89
 lent **lend** 90
 let* **let** 91
 lit **light** 93
 lost **lose** 94

made **make** 95
 meant **mean** 96
 met **meet** 97
 mistaken **mistake** 98
 mistook **mistake** 98
 mown **mow** 99

overcame **overcome** 100
 overcome* **overcome** 100
 overtaken **overtake** 101
 overtook **overtake** 101

pled **plead** 102
 proven **prove** 103
 put* **put** 104

quit* **quit** 105

ran **run** 112
 rang **ring** 110
 read* **read** 106
 rent **rend** 107
 rid* **rid** 108
 ridden **ride** 109
 risen **rise** 111
 rode **ride** 109
 rose **rise** 111
 run* **run** 112
 rung **ring** 110

said **say** 114
 sang **sing** 131
 sank **sink** 132
 sat **sit** 133
 saw **see** 115
 sawn **saw** 113
 seen **see** 115
 sent **send** 118

- set* **set** 119
 sewn **sew** 120
 shaken **shake** 121
 shaven **shave** 122
 shed* **shed** 124
 shod **shoe** 126
 shone **shine** 125
 shook **shake** 121
 shorn **shear** 123
 shot **shoot** 127
 shown **show** 128
 shrank **shrink** 129
 shrunk **shrink** 129
 shut* **shut** 130
 slain **slay** 134
 slept **sleep** 135
 slew **slay** 134
 slid **slide** 136
 slit* **slit** 139
 slung **sling** 137
 slunk **slink** 138
 snuck **sneak** 140
 sold **sell** 117
 sought **seek** 116
 sown **sow** 141
 spat **spit** 146
 sped **speed** 143
 spent **spend** 144
 spit* **spit** 146
 split* **split** 147
 spoke **speak** 142
 spoken **speak** 142
 sprang **spring** 149
 spread* **spread** 148
 sprung **spring** 149
 spun **spin** 145
 stank **stink** 154
 stole **steal** 151
 stolen **steal** 151
 stood **stand** 150
 strewn **strew** 155
 stricken **strike** 157
 stridden **stride** 156
 striven **strive** 159
 strode **stride** 156
 strove **strive** 159
 struck **strike** 157
 struck **strike** 157
 string **string** 158
 stuck **stick** 152
 stung **sting** 153
 stunk **stink** 154
 sung **sing** 131
 sunk **sink** 132
 swam **swim** 164
 sweat* **sweat** 161
 swept **sweep** 162
 swollen **swell** 163
 swore **swear** 160
 sworn **swear** 160
 swum **swim** 164
 swung **swing** 165
 taken **take** 166
 taught **teach** 167
 telecast* **telecast** 169
 thought **think** 171
 threw **throw** 173
 thriven **thrive** 172
 throve **thrive** 172
 thrown **throw** 173
 thrust* **thrust** 174
 told **tell** 170
 took **take** 166
 tore **tear** 168
 torn **tear** 168
 trod **tread** 175
 trodden **tread** 175
 understood **understand** 176
 upheld **uphold** 177
 upset* **upset** 178
 was **be** 3
 wed* **wed** 182
 went **go** 71
 wept **weep** 183
 were **be** 3
 wet* **wet** 184
 woke **wake** 179
 woken **wake** 179
 won **win** 185
 wore **wear** 180
 worn **wear** 180
 wound **wind** 186
 wove **weave** 181
 woven **weave** 181
 written **write** 188
 wrote **write** 188
 wrung **wring** 187

This page intentionally left blank

ABOUT THE AUTHORS

Mark Lester is an experienced grammarian, ESL expert, and professor emeritus of Eastern Washington University. He was the founding chairperson of the ESL department at the University of Hawaii, considered one of the best ESL programs in the United States. He is the author of more than a dozen books, including *Grammar and Usage in the Classroom*, one of the most widely used college grammar textbooks in the country. Mark obtained a B.A. in Philosophy and English Literature at Pomona College and a Ph.D. in Linguistics from the University of California–Berkeley. He also holds an M.B.A. from the University of Hawaii.

Daniel Franklin and **Terry Yokota** are the producers of McGraw-Hill's *Big Book of Verbs* series and are experts at creating effective language acquisition texts.

Daniel obtained a B.A. in Latin at Eastern Illinois University and did graduate work in linguistics at Harvard University. He is coauthor of four books in the *Big Book of Verbs* series (English, German, Italian, and Latin).

Terry obtained a B.A. and M.A. in Spanish Language and Literature at Washington University in St. Louis. She is coauthor, with Mark and Daniel, of *The Big Book of English Verbs*.

Together, Daniel and Terry have edited and produced references, grammars, and textbooks for learners of Chinese, English, French, Italian, Latin, German, Polish, Russian, and Spanish.